
**Information technology — Security
techniques — Evaluation criteria for IT
security —**

**Part 2:
Security functional components**

*Technologies de l'information — Techniques de sécurité — Critères
d'évaluation pour la sécurité TI —*

Partie 2: Composants fonctionnels de sécurité

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of ISO/IEC 15408-2:2008

PDF disclaimer

This PDF file may contain embedded typefaces. In accordance with Adobe's licensing policy, this file may be printed or viewed but shall not be edited unless the typefaces which are embedded are licensed to and installed on the computer performing the editing. In downloading this file, parties accept therein the responsibility of not infringing Adobe's licensing policy. The ISO Central Secretariat accepts no liability in this area.

Adobe is a trademark of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Details of the software products used to create this PDF file can be found in the General Info relative to the file; the PDF-creation parameters were optimized for printing. Every care has been taken to ensure that the file is suitable for use by ISO member bodies. In the unlikely event that a problem relating to it is found, please inform the Central Secretariat at the address given below.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of ISO/IEC 15408-2:2008



COPYRIGHT PROTECTED DOCUMENT

© ISO/IEC 2008

All rights reserved. Unless otherwise specified, no part of this publication may be reproduced or utilized in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and microfilm, without permission in writing from either ISO at the address below or ISO's member body in the country of the requester.

ISO copyright office
Case postale 56 • CH-1211 Geneva 20
Tel. + 41 22 749 01 11
Fax + 41 22 749 09 47
E-mail copyright@iso.org
Web www.iso.org

Published in Switzerland

Contents

	Page	
1	Scope	1
2	Normative references	1
3	Terms and definitions, symbols and abbreviated terms	1
4	Overview	1
4.1	Organisation of this part of ISO/IEC 15408	1
5	Functional requirements paradigm	2
6	Security functional components	5
6.1	Overview	5
6.1.1	Class structure	5
6.1.2	Family structure	6
6.1.3	Component structure	7
6.2	Component catalogue	9
6.2.1	Component changes highlighting	10
7	Class FAU: Security audit	10
7.1	Security audit automatic response (FAU_ARP)	11
7.1.1	Family Behaviour	11
7.1.2	Component levelling	11
7.1.3	Management of FAU_ARP.1	11
7.1.4	Audit of FAU_ARP.1	11
7.1.5	FAU_ARP.1 Security alarms	11
7.2	Security audit data generation (FAU_GEN)	11
7.2.1	Family Behaviour	11
7.2.2	Component levelling	11
7.2.3	Management of FAU_GEN.1, FAU_GEN.2	11
7.2.4	Audit of FAU_GEN.1, FAU_GEN.2	11
7.2.5	FAU_GEN.1 Audit data generation	12
7.2.6	FAU_GEN.2 User identity association	12
7.3	Security audit analysis (FAU_SAA)	12
7.3.1	Family Behaviour	12
7.3.2	Component levelling	12
7.3.3	Management of FAU_SAA.1	13
7.3.4	Management of FAU_SAA.2	13
7.3.5	Management of FAU_SAA.3	13
7.3.6	Management of FAU_SAA.4	13
7.3.7	Audit of FAU_SAA.1, FAU_SAA.2, FAU_SAA.3, FAU_SAA.4	13
7.3.8	FAU_SAA.1 Potential violation analysis	13
7.3.9	FAU_SAA.2 Profile based anomaly detection	14
7.3.10	FAU_SAA.3 Simple attack heuristics	14
7.3.11	FAU_SAA.4 Complex attack heuristics	15
7.4	Security audit review (FAU_SAR)	15
7.4.1	Family Behaviour	15
7.4.2	Component levelling	15
7.4.3	Management of FAU_SAR.1	15
7.4.4	Management of FAU_SAR.2, FAU_SAR.3	15
7.4.5	Audit of FAU_SAR.1	15
7.4.6	Audit of FAU_SAR.2	16
7.4.7	Audit of FAU_SAR.3	16
7.4.8	FAU_SAR.1 Audit review	16
7.4.9	FAU_SAR.2 Restricted audit review	16
7.4.10	FAU_SAR.3 Selectable audit review	16
7.5	Security audit event selection (FAU_SEL)	17

7.5.1	Family Behaviour	17
7.5.2	Component levelling	17
7.5.3	Management of FAU_SEL.1	17
7.5.4	Audit of FAU_SEL.1	17
7.5.5	FAU_SEL.1 Selective audit	17
7.6	Security audit event storage (FAU_STG)	17
7.6.1	Family Behaviour	17
7.6.2	Component levelling	17
7.6.3	Management of FAU_STG.1	18
7.6.4	Management of FAU_STG.2	18
7.6.5	Management of FAU_STG.3	18
7.6.6	Management of FAU_STG.4	18
7.6.7	Audit of FAU_STG.1, FAU_STG.2	18
7.6.8	Audit of FAU_STG.3	18
7.6.9	Audit of FAU_STG.4	18
7.6.10	FAU_STG.1 Protected audit trail storage	18
7.6.11	FAU_STG.2 Guarantees of audit data availability	19
7.6.12	FAU_STG.3 Action in case of possible audit data loss	19
7.6.13	FAU_STG.4 Prevention of audit data loss	19
8	Class FCO: Communication	19
8.1	Non-repudiation of origin (FCO_NRO)	20
8.1.1	Family Behaviour	20
8.1.2	Component levelling	20
8.1.3	Management of FCO_NRO.1, FCO_NRO.2	20
8.1.4	Audit of FCO_NRO.1	20
8.1.5	Audit of FCO_NRO.2	20
8.1.6	FCO_NRO.1 Selective proof of origin	20
8.1.7	FCO_NRO.2 Enforced proof of origin	21
8.2	Non-repudiation of receipt (FCO_NRR)	21
8.2.1	Family Behaviour	21
8.2.2	Component levelling	21
8.2.3	Management of FCO_NRR.1, FCO_NRR.2	21
8.2.4	Audit of FCO_NRR.1	22
8.2.5	Audit of FCO_NRR.2	22
8.2.6	FCO_NRR.1 Selective proof of receipt	22
8.2.7	FCO_NRR.2 Enforced proof of receipt	22
9	Class FCS: Cryptographic support	23
9.1	Cryptographic key management (FCS_CKM)	23
9.1.1	Family Behaviour	23
9.1.2	Component levelling	23
9.1.3	Management of FCS_CKM.1, FCS_CKM.2, FCS_CKM.3, FCS_CKM.4	24
9.1.4	Audit of FCS_CKM.1, FCS_CKM.2, FCS_CKM.3, FCS_CKM.4	24
9.1.5	FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation	24
9.1.6	FCS_CKM.2 Cryptographic key distribution	24
9.1.7	FCS_CKM.3 Cryptographic key access	25
9.1.8	FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction	25
9.2	Cryptographic operation (FCS_COP)	25
9.2.1	Family Behaviour	25
9.2.2	Component levelling	25
9.2.3	Management of FCS_COP.1	25
9.2.4	Audit of FCS_COP.1	26
9.2.5	FCS_COP.1 Cryptographic operation	26
10	Class FDP: User data protection	26
10.1	Access control policy (FDP_ACC)	28
10.1.1	Family Behaviour	28
10.1.2	Component levelling	29
10.1.3	Management of FDP_ACC.1, FDP_ACC.2	29
10.1.4	Audit of FDP_ACC.1, FDP_ACC.2	29

10.1.5	FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control	29
10.1.6	FDP_ACC.2 Complete access control	29
10.2	Access control functions (FDP_ACF)	29
10.2.1	Family Behaviour	29
10.2.2	Component levelling	29
10.2.3	Management of FDP_ACF.1	30
10.2.4	Audit of FDP_ACF.1	30
10.2.5	FDP_ACF.1 Security attribute based access control	30
10.3	Data authentication (FDP_DAU)	31
10.3.1	Family Behaviour	31
10.3.2	Component levelling	31
10.3.3	Management of FDP_DAU.1, FDP_DAU.2	31
10.3.4	Audit of FDP_DAU.1	31
10.3.5	Audit of FDP_DAU.2	31
10.3.6	FDP_DAU.1 Basic Data Authentication	31
10.3.7	FDP_DAU.2 Data Authentication with Identity of Guarantor	32
10.4	Export from the TOE (FDP_ETC)	32
10.4.1	Family Behaviour	32
10.4.2	Component levelling	32
10.4.3	Management of FDP_ETC.1	32
10.4.4	Management of FDP_ETC.2	32
10.4.5	Audit of FDP_ETC.1, FDP_ETC.2	32
10.4.6	FDP_ETC.1 Export of user data without security attributes	33
10.4.7	FDP_ETC.2 Export of user data with security attributes	33
10.5	Information flow control policy (FDP_IFC)	33
10.5.1	Family Behaviour	33
10.5.2	Component levelling	34
10.5.3	Management of FDP_IFC.1, FDP_IFC.2	34
10.5.4	Audit of FDP_IFC.1, FDP_IFC.2	34
10.5.5	FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control	34
10.5.6	FDP_IFC.2 Complete information flow control	34
10.6	Information flow control functions (FDP_IFF)	34
10.6.1	Family Behaviour	34
10.6.2	Component levelling	35
10.6.3	Management of FDP_IFF.1, FDP_IFF.2	35
10.6.4	Management of FDP_IFF.3, FDP_IFF.4, FDP_IFF.5	35
10.6.5	Management of FDP_IFF.6	35
10.6.6	Audit of FDP_IFF.1, FDP_IFF.2, FDP_IFF.5	35
10.6.7	Audit of FDP_IFF.3, FDP_IFF.4, FDP_IFF.6	36
10.6.8	FDP_IFF.1 Simple security attributes	36
10.6.9	FDP_IFF.2 Hierarchical security attributes	36
10.6.10	FDP_IFF.3 Limited illicit information flows	37
10.6.11	FDP_IFF.4 Partial elimination of illicit information flows	38
10.6.12	FDP_IFF.5 No illicit information flows	38
10.6.13	FDP_IFF.6 Illicit information flow monitoring	38
10.7	Import from outside of the TOE (FDP_ITC)	38
10.7.1	Family Behaviour	38
10.7.2	Component levelling	38
10.7.3	Management of FDP_ITC.1, FDP_ITC.2	38
10.7.4	Audit of FDP_ITC.1, FDP_ITC.2	39
10.7.5	FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes	39
10.7.6	FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes	39
10.8	Internal TOE transfer (FDP_ITT)	40
10.8.1	Family Behaviour	40
10.8.2	Component levelling	40
10.8.3	Management of FDP_ITT.1, FDP_ITT.2	40
10.8.4	Management of FDP_ITT.3, FDP_ITT.4	40
10.8.5	Audit of FDP_ITT.1, FDP_ITT.2	41
10.8.6	Audit of FDP_ITT.3, FDP_ITT.4	41
10.8.7	FDP_ITT.1 Basic internal transfer protection	41

10.8.8	FDP_ITT.2 Transmission separation by attribute	41
10.8.9	FDP_ITT.3 Integrity monitoring	42
10.8.10	FDP_ITT.4 Attribute-based integrity monitoring	42
10.9	Residual information protection (FDP_RIP)	42
10.9.1	Family Behaviour	42
10.9.2	Component levelling	42
10.9.3	Management of FDP_RIP.1, FDP_RIP.2	43
10.9.4	Audit of FDP_RIP.1, FDP_RIP.2	43
10.9.5	FDP_RIP.1 Subset residual information protection	43
10.9.6	FDP_RIP.2 Full residual information protection	43
10.10	Rollback (FDP_ROL)	43
10.10.1	Family Behaviour	43
10.10.2	Component levelling	43
10.10.3	Management of FDP_ROL.1, FDP_ROL.2	43
10.10.4	Audit of FDP_ROL.1, FDP_ROL.2	44
10.10.5	FDP_ROL.1 Basic rollback	44
10.10.6	FDP_ROL.2 Advanced rollback	44
10.11	Stored data integrity (FDP_SDI)	44
10.11.1	Family Behaviour	44
10.11.2	Component levelling	45
10.11.3	Management of FDP_SDI.1	45
10.11.4	Management of FDP_SDI.2	45
10.11.5	Audit of FDP_SDI.1	45
10.11.6	Audit of FDP_SDI.2	45
10.11.7	FDP_SDI.1 Stored data integrity monitoring	45
10.11.8	FDP_SDI.2 Stored data integrity monitoring and action	46
10.12	Inter-TSF user data confidentiality transfer protection (FDP_UCT)	46
10.12.1	Family Behaviour	46
10.12.2	Component levelling	46
10.12.3	Management of FDP_UCT.1	46
10.12.4	Audit of FDP_UCT.1	46
10.12.5	FDP_UCT.1 Basic data exchange confidentiality	46
10.13	Inter-TSF user data integrity transfer protection (FDP_UIT)	47
10.13.1	Family Behaviour	47
10.13.2	Component levelling	47
10.13.3	Management of FDP_UIT.1, FDP_UIT.2, FDP_UIT.3	47
10.13.4	Audit of FDP_UIT.1	47
10.13.5	Audit of FDP_UIT.2, FDP_UIT.3	47
10.13.6	FDP_UIT.1 Data exchange integrity	48
10.13.7	FDP_UIT.2 Source data exchange recovery	48
10.13.8	FDP_UIT.3 Destination data exchange recovery	48
11	Class FIA: Identification and authentication	49
11.1	Authentication failures (FIA_AFL)	50
11.1.1	Family Behaviour	50
11.1.2	Component levelling	50
11.1.3	Management of FIA_AFL.1	51
11.1.4	Audit of FIA_AFL.1	51
11.1.5	FIA_AFL.1 Authentication failure handling	51
11.2	User attribute definition (FIA_ATD)	51
11.2.1	Family Behaviour	51
11.2.2	Component levelling	51
11.2.3	Management of FIA_ATD.1	51
11.2.4	Audit of FIA_ATD.1	51
11.2.5	FIA_ATD.1 User attribute definition	52
11.3	Specification of secrets (FIA_SOS)	52
11.3.1	Family Behaviour	52
11.3.2	Component levelling	52
11.3.3	Management of FIA_SOS.1	52
11.3.4	Management of FIA_SOS.2	52

11.3.5	Audit of FIA_SOS.1, FIA_SOS.2	52
11.3.6	FIA_SOS.1 Verification of secrets	52
11.3.7	FIA_SOS.2 TSF Generation of secrets	53
11.4	User authentication (FIA_UAU)	53
11.4.1	Family Behaviour	53
11.4.2	Component levelling	53
11.4.3	Management of FIA_UAU.1	53
11.4.4	Management of FIA_UAU.2	53
11.4.5	Management of FIA_UAU.3, FIA_UAU.4, FIA_UAU.7	54
11.4.6	Management of FIA_UAU.5	54
11.4.7	Management of FIA_UAU.6	54
11.4.8	Audit of FIA_UAU.1	54
11.4.9	Audit of FIA_UAU.2	54
11.4.10	Audit of FIA_UAU.3	54
11.4.11	Audit of FIA_UAU.4	54
11.4.12	Audit of FIA_UAU.5	55
11.4.13	Audit of FIA_UAU.6	55
11.4.14	Audit of FIA_UAU.7	55
11.4.15	FIA_UAU.1 Timing of authentication	55
11.4.16	FIA_UAU.2 User authentication before any action	55
11.4.17	FIA_UAU.3 Unforgeable authentication	55
11.4.18	FIA_UAU.4 Single-use authentication mechanisms	56
11.4.19	FIA_UAU.5 Multiple authentication mechanisms	56
11.4.20	FIA_UAU.6 Re-authenticating	56
11.4.21	FIA_UAU.7 Protected authentication feedback	56
11.5	User identification (FIA_UID)	57
11.5.1	Family Behaviour	57
11.5.2	Component levelling	57
11.5.3	Management of FIA_UID.1	57
11.5.4	Management of FIA_UID.2	57
11.5.5	Audit of FIA_UID.1, FIA_UID.2	57
11.5.6	FIA_UID.1 Timing of identification	57
11.5.7	FIA_UID.2 User identification before any action	57
11.6	User-subject binding (FIA_USB)	58
11.6.1	Family Behaviour	58
11.6.2	Component levelling	58
11.6.3	Management of FIA_USB.1	58
11.6.4	Audit of FIA_USB.1	58
11.6.5	FIA_USB.1 User-subject binding	58
12	Class FMT: Security management	59
12.1	Management of functions in TSF (FMT_MOF)	60
12.1.1	Family Behaviour	60
12.1.2	Component levelling	60
12.1.3	Management of FMT_MOF.1	61
12.1.4	Audit of FMT_MOF.1	61
12.1.5	FMT_MOF.1 Management of security functions behaviour	61
12.2	Management of security attributes (FMT_MSA)	61
12.2.1	Family Behaviour	61
12.2.2	Component levelling	61
12.2.3	Management of FMT_MSA.1	61
12.2.4	Management of FMT_MSA.2	61
12.2.5	Management of FMT_MSA.3	62
12.2.6	Management of FMT_MSA.4	62
12.2.7	Audit of FMT_MSA.1	62
12.2.8	Audit of FMT_MSA.2	62
12.2.9	Audit of FMT_MSA.3	62
12.2.10	Audit of FMT_MSA.4	62
12.2.11	FMT_MSA.1 Management of security attributes	62
12.2.12	FMT_MSA.2 Secure security attributes	63

12.2.13	FMT_MSA.3 Static attribute initialisation	63
12.2.14	FMT_MSA.4 Security attribute value inheritance	63
12.3	Management of TSF data (FMT_MTD).....	64
12.3.1	Family Behaviour.....	64
12.3.2	Component levelling	64
12.3.3	Management of FMT_MTD.1	64
12.3.4	Management of FMT_MTD.2	64
12.3.5	Management of FMT_MTD.3	64
12.3.6	Audit of FMT_MTD.1	64
12.3.7	Audit of FMT_MTD.2	64
12.3.8	Audit of FMT_MTD.3	64
12.3.9	FMT_MTD.1 Management of TSF data.....	64
12.3.10	FMT_MTD.2 Management of limits on TSF data	65
12.3.11	FMT_MTD.3 Secure TSF data	65
12.4	Revocation (FMT_REV)	65
12.4.1	Family Behaviour.....	65
12.4.2	Component levelling	65
12.4.3	Management of FMT_REV.1.....	65
12.4.4	Audit of FMT_REV.1.....	66
12.4.5	FMT_REV.1 Revocation.....	66
12.5	Security attribute expiration (FMT_SAE).....	66
12.5.1	Family Behaviour	66
12.5.2	Component levelling	66
12.5.3	Management of FMT_SAE.1.....	66
12.5.4	Audit of FMT_SAE.1.....	66
12.5.5	FMT_SAE.1 Time-limited authorisation	66
12.6	Specification of Management Functions (FMT_SMF).....	67
12.6.1	Family Behaviour.....	67
12.6.2	Component levelling	67
12.6.3	Management of FMT_SMF.1	67
12.6.4	Audit of FMT_SMF.1	67
12.6.5	FMT_SMF.1 Specification of Management Functions.....	67
12.7	Security management roles (FMT_SMR).....	67
12.7.1	Family Behaviour.....	67
12.7.2	Component levelling	68
12.7.3	Management of FMT_SMR.1	68
12.7.4	Management of FMT_SMR.2.....	68
12.7.5	Management of FMT_SMR.3.....	68
12.7.6	Audit of FMT_SMR.1.....	68
12.7.7	Audit of FMT_SMR.2.....	68
12.7.8	Audit of FMT_SMR.3.....	68
12.7.9	FMT_SMR.1 Security roles.....	68
12.7.10	FMT_SMR.2 Restrictions on security roles.....	69
12.7.11	FMT_SMR.3 Assuming roles	69
13	Class FPR: Privacy	69
13.1	Anonymity (FPR_ANO).....	70
13.1.1	Family Behaviour.....	70
13.1.2	Component levelling	70
13.1.3	Management of FPR_ANO.1, FPR_ANO.2.....	70
13.1.4	Audit of FPR_ANO.1, FPR_ANO.2.....	70
13.1.5	FPR_ANO.1 Anonymity	70
13.1.6	FPR_ANO.2 Anonymity without soliciting information	71
13.2	Pseudonymity (FPR_PSE)	71
13.2.1	Family Behaviour	71
13.2.2	Component levelling	71
13.2.3	Management of FPR_PSE.1, FPR_PSE.2, FPR_PSE.3	71
13.2.4	Audit of FPR_PSE.1, FPR_PSE.2, FPR_PSE.3	71
13.2.5	FPR_PSE.1 Pseudonymity	71
13.2.6	FPR_PSE.2 Reversible pseudonymity.....	72

13.2.7	FPR_PSE.3 Alias pseudonymity	72
13.3	Unlinkability (FPR_UNL)	73
13.3.1	Family Behaviour	73
13.3.2	Component levelling	73
13.3.3	Management of FPR_UNL.1	73
13.3.4	Audit of FPR_UNL.1	73
13.3.5	FPR_UNL.1 Unlinkability	73
13.4	Unobservability (FPR_UNO)	73
13.4.1	Family Behaviour	73
13.4.2	Component levelling	73
13.4.3	Management of FPR_UNO.1, FPR_UNO.2	74
13.4.4	Management of FPR_UNO.3	74
13.4.5	Management of FPR_UNO.4	74
13.4.6	Audit of FPR_UNO.1, FPR_UNO.2	74
13.4.7	Audit of FPR_UNO.3	74
13.4.8	Audit of FPR_UNO.4	74
13.4.9	FPR_UNO.1 Unobservability	74
13.4.10	FPR_UNO.2 Allocation of information impacting unobservability	74
13.4.11	FPR_UNO.3 Unobservability without soliciting information	75
13.4.12	FPR_UNO.4 Authorised user observability	75
14	Class FPT: Protection of the TSF	75
14.1	Fail secure (FPT_FLS)	76
14.1.1	Family Behaviour	76
14.1.2	Component levelling	77
14.1.3	Management of FPT_FLS.1	77
14.1.4	Audit of FPT_FLS.1	77
14.1.5	FPT_FLS.1 Failure with preservation of secure state	77
14.2	Availability of exported TSF data (FPT_ITA)	77
14.2.1	Family Behaviour	77
14.2.2	Component levelling	77
14.2.3	Management of FPT_ITA.1	77
14.2.4	Audit of FPT_ITA.1	77
14.2.5	FPT_ITA.1 Inter-TSF availability within a defined availability metric	77
14.3	Confidentiality of exported TSF data (FPT_ITC)	78
14.3.1	Family Behaviour	78
14.3.2	Component levelling	78
14.3.3	Management of FPT_ITC.1	78
14.3.4	Audit of FPT_ITC.1	78
14.3.5	FPT_ITC.1 Inter-TSF confidentiality during transmission	78
14.4	Integrity of exported TSF data (FPT_ITI)	78
14.4.1	Family Behaviour	78
14.4.2	Component levelling	78
14.4.3	Management of FPT_ITI.1	79
14.4.4	Management of FPT_ITI.2	79
14.4.5	Audit of FPT_ITI.1	79
14.4.6	Audit of FPT_ITI.2	79
14.4.7	FPT_ITI.1 Inter-TSF detection of modification	79
14.4.8	FPT_ITI.2 Inter-TSF detection and correction of modification	79
14.5	Internal TOE TSF data transfer (FPT_ITT)	80
14.5.1	Family Behaviour	80
14.5.2	Component levelling	80
14.5.3	Management of FPT_ITT.1	80
14.5.4	Management of FPT_ITT.2	80
14.5.5	Management of FPT_ITT.3	80
14.5.6	Audit of FPT_ITT.1, FPT_ITT.2	81
14.5.7	Audit of FPT_ITT.3	81
14.5.8	FPT_ITT.1 Basic internal TSF data transfer protection	81
14.5.9	FPT_ITT.2 TSF data transfer separation	81
14.5.10	FPT_ITT.3 TSF data integrity monitoring	81

14.6	TSF physical protection (FPT_PHP)	82
14.6.1	Family Behaviour	82
14.6.2	Component levelling	82
14.6.3	Management of FPT_PHP.1	82
14.6.4	Management of FPT_PHP.2	82
14.6.5	Management of FPT_PHP.3	82
14.6.6	Audit of FPT_PHP.1	82
14.6.7	Audit of FPT_PHP.2	83
14.6.8	Audit of FPT_PHP.3	83
14.6.9	FPT_PHP.1 Passive detection of physical attack	83
14.6.10	FPT_PHP.2 Notification of physical attack	83
14.6.11	FPT_PHP.3 Resistance to physical attack	83
14.7	Trusted recovery (FPT_RCV)	84
14.7.1	Family Behaviour	84
14.7.2	Component levelling	84
14.7.3	Management of FPT_RCV.1	84
14.7.4	Management of FPT_RCV.2, FPT_RCV.3	84
14.7.5	Management of FPT_RCV.4	84
14.7.6	Audit of FPT_RCV.1, FPT_RCV.2, FPT_RCV.3	84
14.7.7	Audit of FPT_RCV.4	84
14.7.8	FPT_RCV.1 Manual recovery	85
14.7.9	FPT_RCV.2 Automated recovery	85
14.7.10	FPT_RCV.3 Automated recovery without undue loss	85
14.7.11	FPT_RCV.4 Function recovery	85
14.8	Replay detection (FPT_RPL)	86
14.8.1	Family Behaviour	86
14.8.2	Component levelling	86
14.8.3	Management of FPT_RPL.1	86
14.8.4	Audit of FPT_RPL.1	86
14.8.5	FPT_RPL.1 Replay detection	86
14.9	State synchrony protocol (FPT_SSP)	86
14.9.1	Family Behaviour	86
14.9.2	Component levelling	87
14.9.3	Management of FPT_SSP.1, FPT_SSP.2	87
14.9.4	Audit of FPT_SSP.1, FPT_SSP.2	87
14.9.5	FPT_SSP.1 Simple trusted acknowledgement	87
14.9.6	FPT_SSP.2 Mutual trusted acknowledgement	87
14.10	Time stamps (FPT_STM)	87
14.10.1	Family Behaviour	87
14.10.2	Component levelling	88
14.10.3	Management of FPT_STM.1	88
14.10.4	Audit of FPT_STM.1	88
14.10.5	FPT_STM.1 Reliable time stamps	88
14.11	Inter-TSF TSF data consistency (FPT_TDC)	88
14.11.1	Family Behaviour	88
14.11.2	Component levelling	88
14.11.3	Management of FPT_TDC.1	88
14.11.4	Audit of FPT_TDC.1	88
14.11.5	FPT_TDC.1 Inter-TSF basic TSF data consistency	89
14.12	Testing of external entities (FPT_TEE)	89
14.12.1	Family Behaviour	89
14.12.2	Component levelling	89
14.12.3	Management of FPT_TEE.1	89
14.12.4	Audit of FPT_TEE.1	89
14.12.5	FPT_TEE.1 Testing of external entities	89
14.13	Internal TOE TSF data replication consistency (FPT_TRC)	90
14.13.1	Family Behaviour	90
14.13.2	Component levelling	90
14.13.3	Management of FPT_TRC.1	90
14.13.4	Audit of FPT_TRC.1	90

14.13.5	FPT_TRC.1 Internal TSF consistency	90
14.14	TSF self test (FPT_TST)	90
14.14.1	Family Behaviour	90
14.14.2	Component levelling	91
14.14.3	Management of FPT_TST.1	91
14.14.4	Audit of FPT_TST.1	91
14.14.5	FPT_TST.1 TSF testing	91
15	Class FRU: Resource utilisation	92
15.1	Fault tolerance (FRU_FLT)	92
15.1.1	Family Behaviour	92
15.1.2	Component levelling	92
15.1.3	Management of FRU_FLT.1, FRU_FLT.2	92
15.1.4	Audit of FRU_FLT.1	92
15.1.5	Audit of FRU_FLT.2	92
15.1.6	FRU_FLT.1 Degraded fault tolerance	93
15.1.7	FRU_FLT.2 Limited fault tolerance	93
15.2	Priority of service (FRU_PRS)	93
15.2.1	Family Behaviour	93
15.2.2	Component levelling	93
15.2.3	Management of FRU_PRS.1, FRU_PRS.2	93
15.2.4	Audit of FRU_PRS.1, FRU_PRS.2	93
15.2.5	FRU_PRS.1 Limited priority of service	93
15.2.6	FRU_PRS.2 Full priority of service	94
15.3	Resource allocation (FRU_RSA)	94
15.3.1	Family Behaviour	94
15.3.2	Component levelling	94
15.3.3	Management of FRU_RSA.1	94
15.3.4	Management of FRU_RSA.2	94
15.3.5	Audit of FRU_RSA.1, FRU_RSA.2	94
15.3.6	FRU_RSA.1 Maximum quotas	95
15.3.7	FRU_RSA.2 Minimum and maximum quotas	95
16	Class FTA: TOE access	95
16.1	Limitation on scope of selectable attributes (FTA_LSA)	96
16.1.1	Family Behaviour	96
16.1.2	Component levelling	96
16.1.3	Management of FTA_LSA.1	96
16.1.4	Audit of FTA_LSA.1	96
16.1.5	FTA_LSA.1 Limitation on scope of selectable attributes	97
16.2	Limitation on multiple concurrent sessions (FTA_MCS)	97
16.2.1	Family Behaviour	97
16.2.2	Component levelling	97
16.2.3	Management of FTA_MCS.1	97
16.2.4	Management of FTA_MCS.2	97
16.2.5	Audit of FTA_MCS.1, FTA_MCS.2	97
16.2.6	FTA_MCS.1 Basic limitation on multiple concurrent sessions	97
16.2.7	FTA_MCS.2 Per user attribute limitation on multiple concurrent sessions	98
16.3	Session locking and termination (FTA_SSL)	98
16.3.1	Family Behaviour	98
16.3.2	Component levelling	98
16.3.3	Management of FTA_SSL.1	98
16.3.4	Management of FTA_SSL.2	98
16.3.5	Management of FTA_SSL.3	99
16.3.6	Management of FTA_SSL.4	99
16.3.7	Audit of FTA_SSL.1, FTA_SSL.2	99
16.3.8	Audit of FTA_SSL.3	99
16.3.9	Audit of FTA_SSL.4	99
16.3.10	FTA_SSL.1 TSF-initiated session locking	99
16.3.11	FTA_SSL.2 User-initiated locking	100
16.3.12	FTA_SSL.3 TSF-initiated termination	100

16.3.13	FTA_SSL.4 User-initiated termination	100
16.4	TOE access banners (FTA_TAB).....	100
16.4.1	Family Behaviour	100
16.4.2	Component levelling	100
16.4.3	Management of FTA_TAB.1	100
16.4.4	Audit of FTA_TAB.1	101
16.4.5	FTA_TAB.1 Default TOE access banners.....	101
16.5	TOE access history (FTA_TAH).....	101
16.5.1	Family Behaviour	101
16.5.2	Component levelling	101
16.5.3	Management of FTA_TAH.1	101
16.5.4	Audit of FTA_TAH.1	101
16.5.5	FTA_TAH.1 TOE access history	101
16.6	TOE session establishment (FTA_TSE)	102
16.6.1	Family Behaviour	102
16.6.2	Component levelling	102
16.6.3	Management of FTA_TSE.1	102
16.6.4	Audit of FTA_TSE.1	102
16.6.5	FTA_TSE.1 TOE session establishment.....	102
17	Class FTP: Trusted path/channels.....	102
17.1	Inter-TSF trusted channel (FTP_ITC)	103
17.1.1	Family Behaviour	103
17.1.2	Component levelling	103
17.1.3	Management of FTP_ITC.1	103
17.1.4	Audit of FTP_ITC.1	103
17.1.5	FTP_ITC.1 Inter-TSF trusted channel.....	103
17.2	Trusted path (FTP_TRP).....	104
17.2.1	Family Behaviour	104
17.2.2	Component levelling	104
17.2.3	Management of FTP_TRP.1	104
17.2.4	Audit of FTP_TRP.1	104
17.2.5	FTP_TRP.1 Trusted path	104
Annex A	(normative) Security functional requirements application notes.....	106
A.1	Structure of the notes	106
A.1.1	Class structure.....	106
A.1.2	Family structure	106
A.1.3	Component structure	107
A.2	Dependency tables	108
Annex B	(normative) Functional classes, families, and components	114
Annex C	(normative) Class FAU: Security audit.....	115
C.1	Audit requirements in a distributed environment	115
C.2	Security audit automatic response (FAU_ARP)	116
C.2.1	User notes	116
C.2.2	FAU_ARP.1 Security alarms	117
C.3	Security audit data generation (FAU_GEN)	117
C.3.1	User notes	117
C.3.2	FAU_GEN.1 Audit data generation.....	118
C.3.3	FAU_GEN.2 User identity association	119
C.4	Security audit analysis (FAU_SAA)	119
C.4.1	User notes	119
C.4.2	FAU_SAA.1 Potential violation analysis	119
C.4.3	FAU_SAA.2 Profile based anomaly detection	120
C.4.4	FAU_SAA.3 Simple attack heuristics.....	121
C.4.5	FAU_SAA.4 Complex attack heuristics	122
C.5	Security audit review (FAU_SAR)	122
C.5.1	User notes	122
C.5.2	FAU_SAR.1 Audit review	123
C.5.3	FAU_SAR.2 Restricted audit review	123

C.5.4	FAU_SAR.3 Selectable audit review	123
C.6	Security audit event selection (FAU_SEL)	124
C.6.1	User notes	124
C.6.2	FAU_SEL.1 Selective audit	124
C.7	Security audit event storage (FAU_STG)	125
C.7.1	User notes	125
C.7.2	FAU_STG.1 Protected audit trail storage	125
C.7.3	FAU_STG.2 Guarantees of audit data availability	125
C.7.4	FAU_STG.3 Action in case of possible audit data loss	126
C.7.5	FAU_STG.4 Prevention of audit data loss	126
Annex D	(normative) Class FCO: Communication	127
D.1	Non-repudiation of origin (FCO_NRO)	127
D.1.1	User notes	127
D.1.2	FCO_NRO.1 Selective proof of origin	128
D.1.3	FCO_NRO.2 Enforced proof of origin	128
D.2	Non-repudiation of receipt (FCO_NRR)	129
D.2.1	User notes	129
D.2.2	FCO_NRR.1 Selective proof of receipt	129
D.2.3	FCO_NRR.2 Enforced proof of receipt	130
Annex E	(normative) Class FCS: Cryptographic support	131
E.1	Cryptographic key management (FCS_CKM)	132
E.1.1	User notes	132
E.1.2	FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation	133
E.1.3	FCS_CKM.2 Cryptographic key distribution	133
E.1.4	FCS_CKM.3 Cryptographic key access	133
E.1.5	FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction	134
E.2	Cryptographic operation (FCS_COP)	134
E.2.1	User notes	134
E.2.2	FCS_COP.1 Cryptographic operation	135
Annex F	(normative) Class FDP: User data protection	136
F.1	Access control policy (FDP_ACC)	139
F.1.1	User notes	139
F.1.2	FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control	139
F.1.3	FDP_ACC.2 Complete access control	140
F.2	Access control functions (FDP_ACF)	140
F.2.1	User notes	140
F.2.2	FDP_ACF.1 Security attribute based access control	140
F.3	Data authentication (FDP_DAU)	142
F.3.1	User notes	142
F.3.2	FDP_DAU.1 Basic Data Authentication	142
F.3.3	FDP_DAU.2 Data Authentication with Identity of Guarantor	142
F.4	Export from the TOE (FDP_ETC)	142
F.4.1	User notes	142
F.4.2	FDP_ETC.1 Export of user data without security attributes	143
F.4.3	FDP_ETC.2 Export of user data with security attributes	143
F.5	Information flow control policy (FDP_IFC)	144
F.5.1	User notes	144
F.5.2	FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control	145
F.5.3	FDP_IFC.2 Complete information flow control	145
F.6	Information flow control functions (FDP_IFF)	145
F.6.1	User notes	145
F.6.2	FDP_IFF.1 Simple security attributes	146
F.6.3	FDP_IFF.2 Hierarchical security attributes	147
F.6.4	FDP_IFF.3 Limited illicit information flows	148
F.6.5	FDP_IFF.4 Partial elimination of illicit information flows	148
F.6.6	FDP_IFF.5 No illicit information flows	149
F.6.7	FDP_IFF.6 Illicit information flow monitoring	149
F.7	Import from outside of the TOE (FDP_ITC)	150

F.7.1	User notes	150
F.7.2	FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes	151
F.7.3	FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes	151
F.8	Internal TOE transfer (FDP_ITT)	151
F.8.1	User notes	151
F.8.2	FDP_ITT.1 Basic internal transfer protection	152
F.8.3	FDP_ITT.2 Transmission separation by attribute	152
F.8.4	FDP_ITT.3 Integrity monitoring	152
F.8.5	FDP_ITT.4 Attribute-based integrity monitoring	153
F.9	Residual information protection (FDP_RIP)	154
F.9.1	User notes	154
F.9.2	FDP_RIP.1 Subset residual information protection	155
F.9.3	FDP_RIP.2 Full residual information protection	155
F.10	Rollback (FDP_ROL)	155
F.10.1	User notes	155
F.10.2	FDP_ROL.1 Basic rollback	156
F.10.3	FDP_ROL.2 Advanced rollback	156
F.11	Stored data integrity (FDP_SDI)	157
F.11.1	User notes	157
F.11.2	FDP_SDI.1 Stored data integrity monitoring	157
F.11.3	FDP_SDI.2 Stored data integrity monitoring and action	157
F.12	Inter-TSF user data confidentiality transfer protection (FDP_UCT)	157
F.12.1	User notes	157
F.12.2	FDP_UCT.1 Basic data exchange confidentiality	158
F.13	Inter-TSF user data integrity transfer protection (FDP_UIT)	158
F.13.1	User notes	158
F.13.2	FDP_UIT.1 Data exchange integrity	158
F.13.3	FDP_UIT.2 Source data exchange recovery	159
F.13.4	FDP_UIT.3 Destination data exchange recovery	159
Annex G	(normative) Class FIA: Identification and authentication	160
G.1	Authentication failures (FIA_AFL)	161
G.1.1	User notes	161
G.1.2	FIA_AFL.1 Authentication failure handling	162
G.2	User attribute definition (FIA_ATD)	163
G.2.1	User notes	163
G.2.2	FIA_ATD.1 User attribute definition	163
G.3	Specification of secrets (FIA_SOS)	163
G.3.1	User notes	163
G.3.2	FIA_SOS.1 Verification of secrets	164
G.3.3	FIA_SOS.2 TSF Generation of secrets	164
G.4	User authentication (FIA_UAU)	164
G.4.1	User notes	164
G.4.2	FIA_UAU.1 Timing of authentication	164
G.4.3	FIA_UAU.2 User authentication before any action	165
G.4.4	FIA_UAU.3 Unforgeable authentication	165
G.4.5	FIA_UAU.4 Single-use authentication mechanisms	165
G.4.6	FIA_UAU.5 Multiple authentication mechanisms	166
G.4.7	FIA_UAU.6 Re-authenticating	166
G.4.8	FIA_UAU.7 Protected authentication feedback	167
G.5	User identification (FIA_UID)	167
G.5.1	User notes	167
G.5.2	FIA_UID.1 Timing of identification	167
G.5.3	FIA_UID.2 User identification before any action	167
G.6	User-subject binding (FIA_USB)	168
G.6.1	User notes	168
G.6.2	FIA_USB.1 User-subject binding	168
Annex H	(normative) Class FMT: Security management	169
H.1	Management of functions in TSF (FMT_MOF)	170
H.1.1	User notes	170

H.1.2	FMT_MOF.1 Management of security functions behaviour	171
H.2	Management of security attributes (FMT_MSA)	171
H.2.1	User notes	171
H.2.2	FMT_MSA.1 Management of security attributes	172
H.2.3	FMT_MSA.2 Secure security attributes	172
H.2.4	FMT_MSA.3 Static attribute initialisation	173
H.2.5	FMT_MSA.4 Security attribute value inheritance	173
H.3	Management of TSF data (FMT_MTD)	173
H.3.1	User notes	173
H.3.2	FMT_MTD.1 Management of TSF data	174
H.3.3	FMT_MTD.2 Management of limits on TSF data	174
H.3.4	FMT_MTD.3 Secure TSF data	175
H.4	Revocation (FMT_REV)	175
H.4.1	User notes	175
H.4.2	FMT_REV.1 Revocation	175
H.5	Security attribute expiration (FMT_SAE)	176
H.5.1	User notes	176
H.5.2	FMT_SAE.1 Time-limited authorisation	176
H.6	Specification of Management Functions (FMT_SMF)	176
H.6.1	User notes	176
H.6.2	FMT_SMF.1 Specification of Management Functions	176
H.7	Security management roles (FMT_SMR)	176
H.7.1	User notes	176
H.7.2	FMT_SMR.1 Security roles	177
H.7.3	FMT_SMR.2 Restrictions on security roles	177
H.7.4	FMT_SMR.3 Assuming roles	177
Annex I	(normative) Class FPR: Privacy	179
I.1	Anonymity (FPR_ANO)	180
I.1.1	User notes	180
I.1.2	FPR_ANO.1 Anonymity	181
I.1.3	FPR_ANO.2 Anonymity without soliciting information	181
I.2	Pseudonymity (FPR_PSE)	182
I.2.1	User notes	182
I.2.2	FPR_PSE.1 Pseudonymity	183
I.2.3	FPR_PSE.2 Reversible pseudonymity	183
I.2.4	FPR_PSE.3 Alias pseudonymity	184
I.3	Unlinkability (FPR_UNL)	185
I.3.1	User notes	185
I.3.2	FPR_UNL.1 Unlinkability	186
I.4	Unobservability (FPR_UNO)	186
I.4.1	User notes	186
I.4.2	FPR_UNO.1 Unobservability	187
I.4.3	FPR_UNO.2 Allocation of information impacting unobservability	187
I.4.4	FPR_UNO.3 Unobservability without soliciting information	188
I.4.5	FPR_UNO.4 Authorised user observability	189
Annex J	(normative) Class FPT: Protection of the TSF	190
J.1	Fail secure (FPT_FLS)	191
J.1.1	User notes	191
J.1.2	FPT_FLS.1 Failure with preservation of secure state	192
J.2	Availability of exported TSF data (FPT_ITA)	192
J.2.1	User notes	192
J.2.2	FPT_ITA.1 Inter-TSF availability within a defined availability metric	192
J.3	Confidentiality of exported TSF data (FPT_ITC)	192
J.3.1	User notes	192
J.3.2	FPT_ITC.1 Inter-TSF confidentiality during transmission	193
J.4	Integrity of exported TSF data (FPT_ITI)	193
J.4.1	User notes	193
J.4.2	FPT_ITI.1 Inter-TSF detection of modification	193
J.4.3	FPT_ITI.2 Inter-TSF detection and correction of modification	193

J.5	Internal TOE TSF data transfer (FPT_ITT)	194
J.5.1	User notes	194
J.5.2	Evaluator notes	194
J.5.3	FPT_ITT.1 Basic internal TSF data transfer protection.....	194
J.5.4	FPT_ITT.2 TSF data transfer separation.....	194
J.5.5	FPT_ITT.3 TSF data integrity monitoring	195
J.6	TSF physical protection (FPT_PHP)	195
J.6.1	User notes	195
J.6.2	FPT_PHP.1 Passive detection of physical attack.....	196
J.6.3	FPT_PHP.2 Notification of physical attack	196
J.6.4	FPT_PHP.3 Resistance to physical attack	196
J.7	Trusted recovery (FPT_RCV).....	197
J.7.1	User notes	197
J.7.2	FPT_RCV.1 Manual recovery	198
J.7.3	FPT_RCV.2 Automated recovery.....	198
J.7.4	FPT_RCV.3 Automated recovery without undue loss.....	199
J.7.5	FPT_RCV.4 Function recovery	199
J.8	Replay detection (FPT_RPL).....	200
J.8.1	User notes	200
J.8.2	FPT_RPL.1 Replay detection	200
J.9	State synchrony protocol (FPT_SSP)	200
J.9.1	User notes	200
J.9.2	FPT_SSP.1 Simple trusted acknowledgement	201
J.9.3	FPT_SSP.2 Mutual trusted acknowledgement.....	201
J.10	Time stamps (FPT_STM).....	201
J.10.1	User notes	201
J.10.2	FPT_STM.1 Reliable time stamps.....	201
J.11	Inter-TSF TSF data consistency (FPT_TDC)	201
J.11.1	User notes	201
J.11.2	FPT_TDC.1 Inter-TSF basic TSF data consistency	202
J.12	Testing of external entities (FPT_TEE).....	202
J.12.1	User notes	202
J.12.2	Evaluator notes	202
J.12.3	FPT_TEE.1 Testing of external entities	202
J.13	Internal TOE TSF data replication consistency (FPT_TRC)	203
J.13.1	User notes	203
J.13.2	FPT_TRC.1 Internal TSF consistency	203
J.14	TSF self test (FPT_TST)	204
J.14.1	User notes	204
J.14.2	FPT_TST.1 TSF testing.....	204
Annex K	(normative) Class FRU: Resource utilisation	206
K.1	Fault tolerance (FRU_FLT).....	206
K.1.1	User notes	206
K.1.2	FRU_FLT.1 Degraded fault tolerance.....	207
K.1.3	FRU_FLT.2 Limited fault tolerance	207
K.2	Priority of service (FRU_PRS)	207
K.2.1	User notes	207
K.2.2	FRU_PRS.1 Limited priority of service.....	208
K.2.3	FRU_PRS.2 Full priority of service	208
K.3	Resource allocation (FRU_RSA)	208
K.3.1	User notes	208
K.3.2	FRU_RSA.1 Maximum quotas	209
K.3.3	FRU_RSA.2 Minimum and maximum quotas	209
Annex L	(normative) Class FTA: TOE access	211
L.1	Limitation on scope of selectable attributes (FTA_LSA).....	212
L.1.1	User notes	212
L.1.2	FTA_LSA.1 Limitation on scope of selectable attributes	212
L.2	Limitation on multiple concurrent sessions (FTA_MCS).....	212
L.2.1	User notes	212

L.2.2	FTA_MCS.1 Basic limitation on multiple concurrent sessions	212
L.2.3	FTA_MCS.2 Per user attribute limitation on multiple concurrent sessions	213
L.3	Session locking and termination (FTA_SSL).....	213
L.3.1	User notes	213
L.3.2	FTA_SSL.1 TSF-initiated session locking.....	213
L.3.3	FTA_SSL.2 User-initiated locking.....	214
L.3.4	FTA_SSL.3 TSF-initiated termination	214
L.3.5	FTA_SSL.4 User-initiated termination.....	214
L.4	TOE access banners (FTA_TAB)	215
L.4.1	User notes	215
L.4.2	FTA_TAB.1 Default TOE access banners	215
L.5	TOE access history (FTA_TAH)	215
L.5.1	User notes	215
L.5.2	FTA_TAH.1 TOE access history.....	215
L.6	TOE session establishment (FTA_TSE)	215
L.6.1	User notes	215
L.6.2	FTA_TSE.1 TOE session establishment	216
Annex M	(normative) Class FTP: Trusted path/channels	217
M.1	Inter-TSF trusted channel (FTP_ITC).....	217
M.1.1	User notes	217
M.1.2	FTP_ITC.1 Inter-TSF trusted channel	217
M.2	Trusted path (FTP_TRP)	218
M.2.1	User notes	218
M.2.2	FTP_TRP.1 Trusted path.....	218

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of ISO/IEC 15408-2:2008

Foreword

ISO (the International Organization for Standardization) and IEC (the International Electrotechnical Commission) form the specialized system for worldwide standardization. National bodies that are members of ISO or IEC participate in the development of International Standards through technical committees established by the respective organization to deal with particular fields of technical activity. ISO and IEC technical committees collaborate in fields of mutual interest. Other international organizations, governmental and non-governmental, in liaison with ISO and IEC, also take part in the work. In the field of information technology, ISO and IEC have established a joint technical committee, ISO/IEC JTC 1.

International Standards are drafted in accordance with the rules given in the ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2.

The main task of the joint technical committee is to prepare International Standards. Draft International Standards adopted by the joint technical committee are circulated to national bodies for voting. Publication as an International Standard requires approval by at least 75 % of the national bodies casting a vote.

Attention is drawn to the possibility that some of the elements of this document may be the subject of patent rights. ISO and IEC shall not be held responsible for identifying any or all such patent rights.

ISO/IEC 15408-2 was prepared by Joint Technical Committee ISO/IEC JTC 1, *Information technology*, Subcommittee SC 27, *IT Security techniques*. The identical text of ISO/IEC 15408 is published by the Common Criteria Project Sponsoring Organisations as Common Criteria for Information Technology Security Evaluation. The common XML source for both publications can be found at <http://www.oc.ccn.cni.es/xml>

This third edition cancels and replaces the second edition (ISO/IEC 15408-2:2005), which has been technically revised.

ISO/IEC 15408 consists of the following parts, under the general title *Information technology — Security techniques — Evaluation criteria for IT security*:

- *Part 1: Introduction and general model*
- *Part 2: Security functional components*
- *Part 3: Security assurance components*

Legal Notice

The governmental organizations listed below contributed to the development of this version of the Common Criteria for Information Technology Security Evaluations. As the joint holders of the copyright in the Common Criteria for Information Technology Security Evaluations, version 3.1 Parts 1 through 3 (called CC 3.1), they hereby grant non-exclusive license to ISO/IEC to use CC 3.1 in the continued development/maintenance of the ISO/IEC 15408 international standard. However, these governmental organizations retain the right to use, copy, distribute, translate or modify CC 3.1 as they see fit.

Australia/New Zealand:	The Defence Signals Directorate and the Government Communications Security Bureau respectively;
Canada:	Communications Security Establishment;
France:	Direction Centrale de la Sécurité des Systèmes d'Information;
Germany:	Bundesamt für Sicherheit in der Informationstechnik;
Japan:	Information Technology Promotion Agency;

Netherlands:	Netherlands National Communications Security Agency;
Spain:	Ministerio de Administraciones Públicas and Centro Criptológico Nacional;
United Kingdom:	Communications-Electronic Security Group;
United States:	The National Security Agency and the National Institute of Standards and Technology.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of ISO/IEC 15408-2:2008

Introduction

Security functional components, as defined in this part of ISO/IEC 15408, are the basis for the security functional requirements expressed in a Protection Profile (PP) or a Security Target (ST). These requirements describe the desired security behaviour expected of a Target of Evaluation (TOE) and are intended to meet the security objectives as stated in a PP or an ST. These requirements describe security properties that users can detect by direct interaction (i.e. inputs, outputs) with the IT or by the IT response to stimulus.

Security functional components express security requirements intended to counter threats in the assumed operating environment of the TOE and/or cover any identified organisational security policies and assumptions.

The audience for this part of ISO/IEC 15408 includes consumers, developers, and evaluators of secure IT products. ISO/IEC 15408-1 Clause 5 provides additional information on the target audience of ISO/IEC 15408, and on the use of ISO/IEC 15408 by the groups that comprise the target audience. These groups may use this part of ISO/IEC 15408 as follows:

- a) Consumers, who use this part of ISO/IEC 15408 when selecting components to express functional requirements to satisfy the security objectives expressed in a PP or ST. ISO/IEC 15408-1 provides more detailed information on the relationship between security objectives and security requirements.
- b) Developers, who respond to actual or perceived consumer security requirements in constructing a TOE, may find a standardised method to understand those requirements in this part of ISO/IEC 15408. They can also use the contents of this part of ISO/IEC 15408 as a basis for further defining the TOE security functionality and mechanisms that comply with those requirements.
- c) Evaluators, who use the functional requirements defined in this part of ISO/IEC 15408 in verifying that the TOE functional requirements expressed in the PP or ST satisfy the IT security objectives and that all dependencies are accounted for and shown to be satisfied. Evaluators also should use this part of ISO/IEC 15408 to assist in determining whether a given TOE satisfies stated requirements.

Information technology — Security techniques — Evaluation criteria for IT security —

Part 2: Security functional components

1 Scope

This part of ISO/IEC 15408 defines the required structure and content of security functional components for the purpose of security evaluation. It includes a catalogue of functional components that will meet the common security functionality requirements of many IT products.

2 Normative references

The following referenced documents are indispensable for the application of this document. For dated references, only the edition cited applies. For undated references, the latest edition of the referenced document (including any amendments) applies.

ISO/IEC 15408-1, *Information technology — Security techniques — Evaluation criteria for IT security — Part 1: Introduction and general model*

3 Terms and definitions, symbols and abbreviated terms

For the purposes of this document, the terms, definitions, symbols and abbreviated terms given in ISO/IEC 15408-1 apply.

4 Overview

ISO/IEC 15408 and the associated security functional requirements described herein are not meant to be a definitive answer to all the problems of IT security. Rather, ISO/IEC 15408 offers a set of well understood security functional requirements that can be used to create trusted products reflecting the needs of the market. These security functional requirements are presented as the current state of the art in requirements specification and evaluation.

This part of ISO/IEC 15408 does not presume to include all possible security functional requirements but rather contains those that are known and agreed to be of value by this part of ISO/IEC 15408 authors at the time of release.

Since the understanding and needs of consumers may change, the functional requirements in this part of ISO/IEC 15408 will need to be maintained. It is envisioned that some PP/ST authors may have security needs not (yet) covered by the functional requirement components in this part of ISO/IEC 15408. In those cases the PP/ST author may choose to consider using functional requirements not taken from ISO/IEC 15408 (referred to as extensibility), as explained in annexes A and B of ISO/IEC 15408-1.

4.1 Organisation of this part of ISO/IEC 15408

Clause 5 describes the paradigm used in the security functional requirements of this part of ISO/IEC 15408.

Clause 6 introduces the catalogue of this part of ISO/IEC 15408 functional components while clauses 7 through 17 describe the functional classes.

Annex A provides explanatory information for potential users of the functional components including a complete cross reference table of the functional component dependencies.

Annex B through Annex M provide the explanatory information for the functional classes. This material must be seen as normative instructions on how to apply relevant operations and select appropriate audit or documentation information; the use of the auxiliary verb should means that the instruction is strongly preferred, but others may be justifiable. Where different options are given, the choice is left to the PP/ST author.

Those who author PPs or STs should refer to clause 2 of ISO/IEC 15408-1 for relevant structures, rules, and guidance:

- a) ISO/IEC 15408-1, clause 3 defines the terms used in ISO/IEC 15408.
- b) ISO/IEC 15408-1, annex A defines the structure for STs.
- c) ISO/IEC 15408-1, annex B defines the structure for PPs.

5 Functional requirements paradigm

This clause describes the paradigm used in the security functional requirements of this part of ISO/IEC 15408. Key concepts discussed are highlighted in bold/italics. This subclause is not intended to replace or supersede any of the terms found in ISO/IEC 15408-1, clause 3.

This part of ISO/IEC 15408 is a catalogue of security functional components that can be specified for a **Target of Evaluation (TOE)**. A TOE is a set of software, firmware and/or hardware possibly accompanied by user and administrator guidance documentation. A TOE may contain resources such as electronic storage media (e.g. main memory, disk space), peripheral devices (e.g. printers), and computing capacity (e.g. CPU time) that can be used for processing and storing information and is the subject of an evaluation.

TOE evaluation is concerned primarily with ensuring that a defined set of **security functional requirements (SFRs)** is enforced over the TOE resources. The SFRs define the rules by which the TOE governs access to and use of its resources, and thus information and services controlled by the TOE.

The SFRs may define multiple **Security Function Policies (SFPs)** to represent the rules that the TOE must enforce. Each such SFP must specify its **scope of control**, by defining the subjects, objects, resources or information, and operations to which it applies. All SFPs are implemented by the TSF (see below), whose mechanisms enforce the rules defined in the SFRs and provide necessary capabilities.

Those portions of a TOE that must be relied on for the correct enforcement of the SFRs are collectively referred to as the **TOE Security Functionality (TSF)**. The TSF consists of all hardware, software, and firmware of a TOE that is either directly or indirectly relied upon for security enforcement.

The TOE may be a monolithic product containing hardware, firmware, and software.

Alternatively a TOE may be a distributed product that consists internally of multiple separated parts. Each of these parts of the TOE provides a particular service for the TOE, and is connected to the other parts of the TOE through an **internal communication channel**. This channel can be as small as a processor bus, or may encompass a network internal to the TOE.

When the TOE consists of multiple parts, each part of the TOE may have its own part of the TSF which exchanges user and TSF data over internal communication channels with other parts of the TSF. This interaction is called **internal TOE transfer**. In this case the separate parts of the TSF abstractly form the composite TSF, which enforces the SFRs.

TOE interfaces may be localised to the particular TOE, or they may allow interaction with other IT products over **external communication channels**. These external interactions with other IT products may take two forms:

- a) The SFRs of the other "trusted IT product" and the SFRs of the TOE have been administratively coordinated and the other trusted IT product is assumed to enforce its SFRs correctly (e. g. by being

separately evaluated). Exchanges of information in this situation are called **inter-TSF transfers**, as they are between the TSFs of distinct trusted products.

- b) The other IT product may not be trusted, it may be called an “untrusted IT product”. Therefore its SFRs are either unknown or their implementation is not viewed as trustworthy. TSF mediated exchanges of information in this situation are called **transfers outside of the TOE**, as there is no TSF (or its policy characteristics are unknown) on the other IT product.

The set of interfaces, whether interactive (man-machine interface) or programmatic (application programming interface), through which resources are accessed that are mediated by the TSF, or information is obtained from the TSF, is referred to as the **TSF Interface (TSFI)**. The TSFI defines the boundaries of the TOE functionality that provide for the enforcement of the SFRs.

Users are outside of the TOE. However, in order to request that services be performed by the TOE that are subject to rules defined in the SFRs, users interact with the TOE through the TSFIs. There are two types of users of interest to this part of ISO/IEC 15408: **human users** and **external IT entities**. Human users may further be differentiated as **local human users**, meaning they interact directly with the TOE via TOE devices (e.g. workstations), or **remote human users**, meaning they interact indirectly with the TOE through another IT product.

A period of interaction between users and the TSF is referred to as a **user session**. Establishment of user sessions can be controlled based on a variety of considerations, for example: user authentication, time of day, method of accessing the TOE, and number of allowed concurrent sessions (per user or in total).

This part of ISO/IEC 15408 uses the term **authorised** to signify a user who possesses the rights and/or privileges necessary to perform an operation. The term **authorised user**, therefore, indicates that it is allowable for a user to perform a specific operation or a set of operations as defined by the SFRs.

To express requirements that call for the separation of administrator duties, the relevant security functional components (from family FMT_SMR) explicitly state that administrative **roles** are required. A role is a pre-defined set of rules establishing the allowed interactions between a user operating in that role and the TOE. A TOE may support the definition of any number of roles. For example, roles related to the secure operation of a TOE may include “Audit Administrator” and “User Accounts Administrator”.

TOEs contain **resources** that may be used for the processing and storing of information. The primary goal of the TSF is the complete and correct enforcement of the SFRs over the resources and information that the TOE controls.

TOE resources can be structured and utilised in many different ways. However, this part of ISO/IEC 15408 makes a specific distinction that allows for the specification of desired security properties. All entities that can be created from resources can be characterised in one of two ways. The entities may be active, meaning that they are the cause of actions that occur internal to the TOE and cause operations to be performed on information. Alternatively, the entities may be passive, meaning that they are either the container from which information originates or to which information is stored.

Active entities in the TOE that perform operations on objects are referred to as **subjects**. Several types of subjects may exist within a TOE:

- a) those acting on behalf of an authorised user (e.g. UNIX processes);
- b) those acting as a specific functional process that may in turn act on behalf of multiple users (e.g. functions as might be found in client/server architectures); or
- c) those acting as part of the TOE itself (e.g. processes not acting on behalf of a user).

This part of ISO/IEC 15408 addresses the enforcement of the SFRs over types of subjects as those listed above.

Passive entities in the TOE that contain or receive information and upon which subjects perform operations are called **objects**. In the case where a subject (an active entity) is the target of an operation (e.g. interprocess communication), a subject may also be acted on as an object.

Objects can contain **information**. This concept is required to specify information flow control policies as addressed in the FDP class.

Users, subjects, information, objects, sessions and resources controlled by rules in the SFRs may possess certain **attributes** that contain information that is used by the TOE for its correct operation. Some attributes, such as file names, may be intended to be informational or may be used to identify individual resources while others, such as access control information, may exist specifically for the enforcement of the SFRs. These latter attributes are generally referred to as "**security attributes**". The word attribute will be used as a shorthand in some places of this part of ISO/IEC 15408 for the word "security attribute". However, no matter what the intended purpose of the attribute information, it may be necessary to have controls on attributes as dictated by the SFRs.

Data in a TOE is categorised as either user data or TSF data. Figure 1 depicts this relationship. **User Data** is information stored in TOE resources that can be operated upon by users in accordance with the SFRs and upon which the TSF places no special meaning. For example, the content of an electronic mail message is user data. TSF Data is information used by the TSF in making decisions as required by the SFRs. **TSF Data** may be influenced by users if allowed by the SFRs. Security attributes, authentication data, TSF internal status variables used by the rules defined in the SFRs or used for the protection of the TSF and access control list entries are examples of TSF data.

There are several SFPs that apply to data protection such as **access control SFPs** and **information flow control SFPs**. The mechanisms that implement access control SFPs base their policy decisions on attributes of the users, resources, subjects, objects, sessions, TSF status data and operations within the scope of control. These attributes are used in the set of rules that govern operations that subjects may perform on objects.

The mechanisms that implement information flow control SFPs base their policy decisions on the attributes of the subjects and information within the scope of control and the set of rules that govern the operations by subjects on information. The attributes of the information, which may be associated with the attributes of the container or may be derived from the data in the container, stay with the information as it is processed by the TSF.

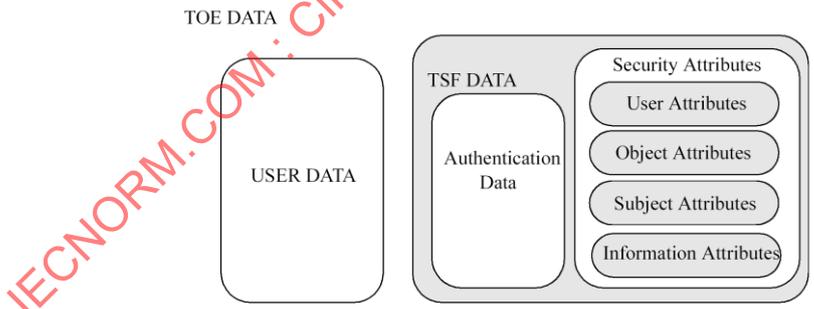


Figure 1 - Relationship between user data and TSF data

Two specific types of TSF data addressed by this part of ISO/IEC 15408 can be, but are not necessarily, the same. These are **authentication data** and **secrets**.

Authentication data is used to verify the claimed identity of a user requesting services from a TOE. The most common form of authentication data is the password, which depends on being kept secret in order to be an effective security mechanism. However, not all forms of authentication data need to be kept secret. Biometric authentication devices (e.g. fingerprint readers, retinal scanners) do not rely on the fact that the data is kept secret, but rather that the data is something that only one user possesses and that cannot be forged.

The term secrets, as used in this part of ISO/IEC 15408, while applicable to authentication data, is intended to also be applicable to other types of data that must be kept secret in order to enforce a specific SFP. For example, a trusted channel mechanism that relies on cryptography to preserve the confidentiality of information being transmitted via the channel can only be as strong as the method used to keep the cryptographic keys secret from unauthorised disclosure.

Therefore, some, but not all, authentication data needs to be kept secret and some, but not all, secrets are used as authentication data. Figure 2 shows this relationship between secrets and authentication data. In the Figure the types of data typically encountered in the authentication data and the secrets subclauses are indicated.

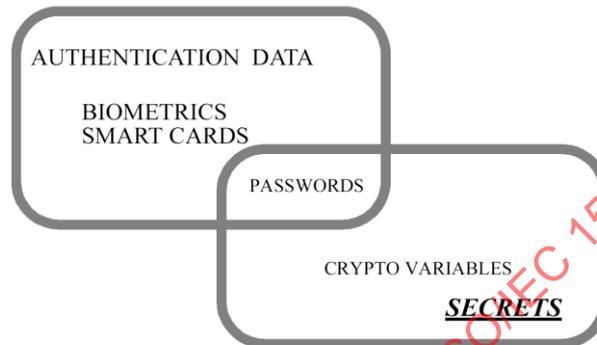


Figure 2 - Relationship between “authentication data” and “secrets”

6 Security functional components

6.1 Overview

This clause defines the content and presentation of the functional requirements of ISO/IEC 15408, and provides guidance on the organisation of the requirements for new components to be included in an ST. The functional requirements are expressed in classes, families, and components.

6.1.1 Class structure

Figure 3 illustrates the functional class structure in diagrammatic form. Each functional class includes a class name, class introduction, and one or more functional families.

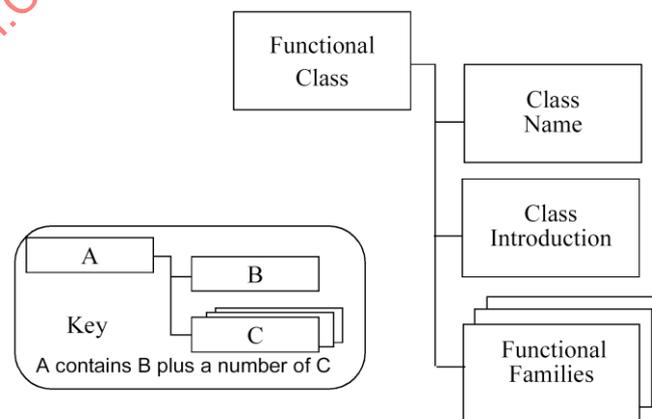


Figure 3 - Functional class structure

6.1.1.1 Class name

The class name subclause provides information necessary to identify and categorise a functional class. Every functional class has a unique name. The categorical information consists of a short name of three characters. The short name of the class is used in the specification of the short names of the families of that class.

6.1.1.2 Class introduction

The class introduction expresses the common intent or approach of those families to satisfy security objectives. The definition of functional classes does not reflect any formal taxonomy in the specification of the requirements.

The class introduction provides a figure describing the families in this class and the hierarchy of the components in each family, as explained in subclause 6.2.

6.1.2 Family structure

Figure 4 illustrates the functional family structure in diagrammatic form.

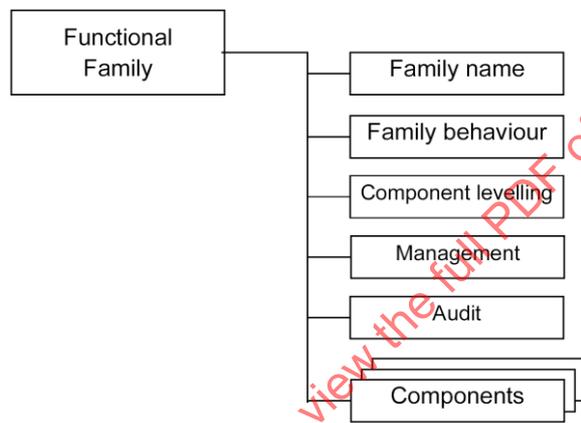


Figure 4 - Functional family structure

6.1.2.1 Family name

The family name subclause provides categorical and descriptive information necessary to identify and categorise a functional family. Every functional family has a unique name. The categorical information consists of a short name of seven characters, with the first three identical to the short name of the class followed by an underscore and the short name of the family as follows XXX_YYY. The unique short form of the family name provides the principal reference name for the components.

6.1.2.2 Family behaviour

The family behaviour is the narrative description of the functional family stating its security objective and a general description of the functional requirements. These are described in greater detail below:

- a) The *security objectives* of the family address a security problem that may be solved with the help of a TOE that incorporates a component of this family;
- b) The description of the *functional requirements* summarises all the requirements that are included in the component(s). The description is aimed at authors of PPs, STs and functional packages who wish to assess whether the family is relevant to their specific requirements.

6.1.2.3 Component levelling

Functional families contain one or more components, any one of which can be selected for inclusion in PPs, STs and functional packages. The goal of this subclause is to provide information to users in selecting an appropriate functional component once the family has been identified as being a necessary or useful part of their security requirements.

This subclause of the functional family description describes the components available, and their rationale. The exact details of the components are contained within each component.

The relationships between components within a functional family may or may not be hierarchical. A component is hierarchical to another if it offers more security.

As explained in 6.2 the descriptions of the families provide a graphical overview of the hierarchy of the components in a family.

6.1.2.4 Management

The *management* clauses contain information for the PP/ST authors to consider as management activities for a given component. The clauses reference components of the management class (FMT), and provide guidance regarding potential management activities that may be applied via operations to those components.

A PP/ST author may select the indicated management components or may include other management requirements not listed to detail management activities. As such the information should be considered informative.

6.1.2.5 Audit

The *audit* requirements contain auditable events for the PP/ST authors to select, if requirements from the class FAU: Security audit, are included in the PP/ST. These requirements include security relevant events in terms of the various levels of detail supported by the components of the Security audit data generation (FAU_GEN) family. For example, an audit note might include actions that are in terms of: Minimal - successful use of the security mechanism; Basic - any use of the security mechanism as well as relevant information regarding the security attributes involved; Detailed - any configuration changes made to the mechanism, including the actual configuration values before and after the change.

It should be observed that the categorisation of auditable events is hierarchical. For example, when Basic Audit Generation is desired, all auditable events identified as being both Minimal and Basic should be included in the PP/ST through the use of the appropriate assignment operation, except when the higher level event simply provides more detail than the lower level event. When Detailed Audit Generation is desired, all identified auditable events (Minimal, Basic and Detailed) should be included in the PP/ST.

In the class FAU: Security audit the rules governing the audit are explained in more detail.

6.1.3 Component structure

Figure 5 illustrates the functional component structure.

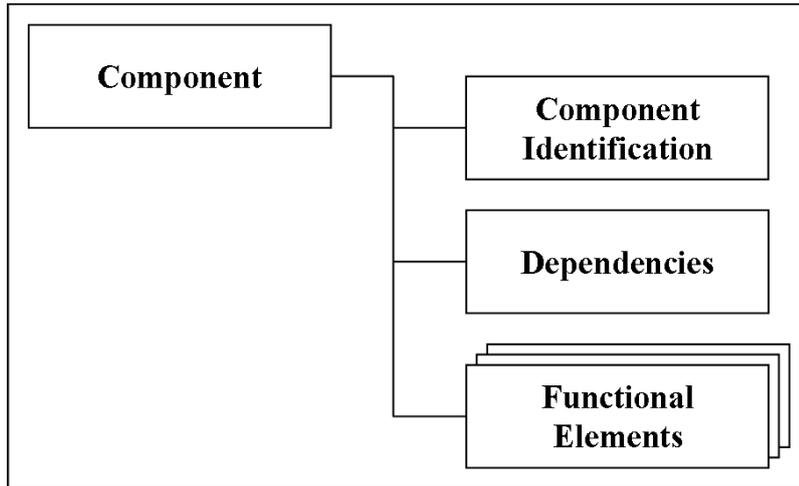


Figure 5 - Functional component structure

6.1.3.1 Component identification

The component identification subclause provides descriptive information necessary to identify, categorise, register and cross-reference a component. The following is provided as part of every functional component:

A unique name. The name reflects the purpose of the component.

A short name. A unique short form of the functional component name. This short name serves as the principal reference name for the categorisation, registration and cross-referencing of the component. This short name reflects the class and family to which the component belongs and the component number within the family.

A hierarchical-to list. A list of other components that this component is hierarchical to and for which this component can be used to satisfy dependencies to the listed components.

6.1.3.2 Functional elements

A set of elements is provided for each component. Each element is individually defined and is self-contained.

A functional element is a security functional requirement that if further divided would not yield a meaningful evaluation result. It is the smallest security functional requirement identified and recognised in ISO/IEC 15408.

When building packages, PPs and/or STs, it is not permitted to select only one or more elements from a component. The complete set of elements of a component must be selected for inclusion in a PP, ST or package.

A unique short form of the functional element name is provided. For example the requirement name FDP_IGF.4.2 reads as follows: F - functional requirement, DP - class "User data protection", _IGF - family "Information flow control functions", .4 - 4th component named "Partial elimination of illicit information flows", .2 - 2nd element of the component.

6.1.3.3 Dependencies

Dependencies among functional components arise when a component is not self sufficient and relies upon the functionality of, or interaction with, another component for its own proper functioning.

Each functional component provides a complete list of dependencies to other functional and assurance components. Some components may list "No dependencies". The components depended upon may in turn have dependencies on other components. The list provided in the components will be the direct dependencies. That is only references to the functional requirements that are required for this requirement to perform its job properly. The indirect dependencies, that is the dependencies that result from the depended upon components can be found in Annex A of this part of ISO/IEC 15408. It is noted that in some cases the

dependency is optional in that a number of functional requirements are provided, where each one of them would be sufficient to satisfy the dependency (see for example FDP_UIT.1 Data exchange integrity).

The dependency list identifies the minimum functional or assurance components needed to satisfy the security requirements associated with an identified component. Components that are hierarchical to the identified component may also be used to satisfy the dependency.

The dependencies indicated in this part of ISO/IEC 15408 are normative. They must be satisfied within a PP/ST. In specific situations the indicated dependencies might not be applicable. The PP/ST author, by providing the rationale why it is not applicable, may leave the depended upon component out of the package, PP or ST.

6.2 Component catalogue

The grouping of the components in this part of ISO/IEC 15408 does not reflect any formal taxonomy.

This part of ISO/IEC 15408 contains classes of families and components, which are rough groupings on the basis of related function or purpose, presented in alphabetic order. At the start of each class is an informative diagram that indicates the taxonomy of each class, indicating the families in each class and the components in each family. The diagram is a useful indicator of the hierarchical relationship that may exist between components.

In the description of the functional components, a subclause identifies the dependencies between the component and any other components.

In each class a figure describing the family hierarchy similar to Figure 6, is provided. In Figure 6 the first family, Family 1, contains three hierarchical components, where component 2 and component 3 can both be used to satisfy dependencies on component 1. Component 3 is hierarchical to component 2 and can also be used to satisfy dependencies on component 2.

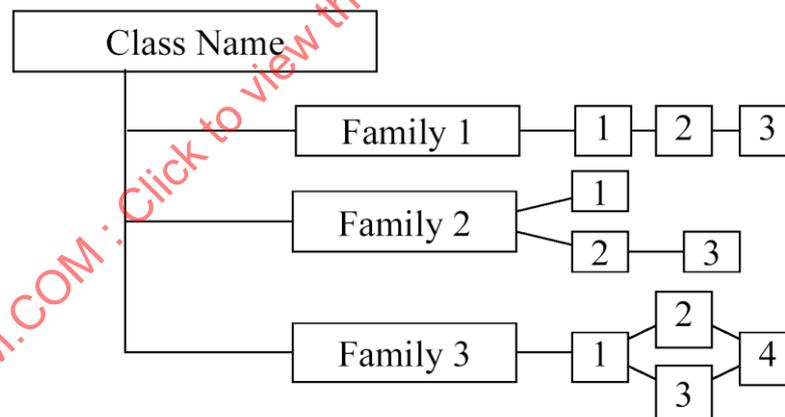


Figure 6 - Sample class decomposition diagram

In Family 2 there are three components not all of which are hierarchical. Components 1 and 2 are hierarchical to no other components. Component 3 is hierarchical to component 2, and can be used to satisfy dependencies on component 2, but not to satisfy dependencies on component 1.

In Family 3, components 2, 3, and 4 are hierarchical to component 1. Components 2 and 3 are both hierarchical to component 1, but non-comparable. Component 4 is hierarchical to both component 2 and component 3.

These diagrams are meant to complement the text of the families and make identification of the relationships easier. They do not replace the "Hierarchical to:" note in each component that is the mandatory claim of hierarchy for each component.

6.2.1 Component changes highlighting

The relationship between components within a family is highlighted using a **bolding** convention. This bolding convention calls for the bolding of all new requirements. For hierarchical components, requirements are bolded when they are enhanced or modified beyond the requirements of the previous component. In addition, any new or enhanced permitted operations beyond the previous component are also highlighted using **bold** type.

7 Class FAU: Security audit

Security auditing involves recognising, recording, storing, and analysing information related to security relevant activities (i.e. activities controlled by the TSF). The resulting audit records can be examined to determine which security relevant activities took place and whom (which user) is responsible for them.

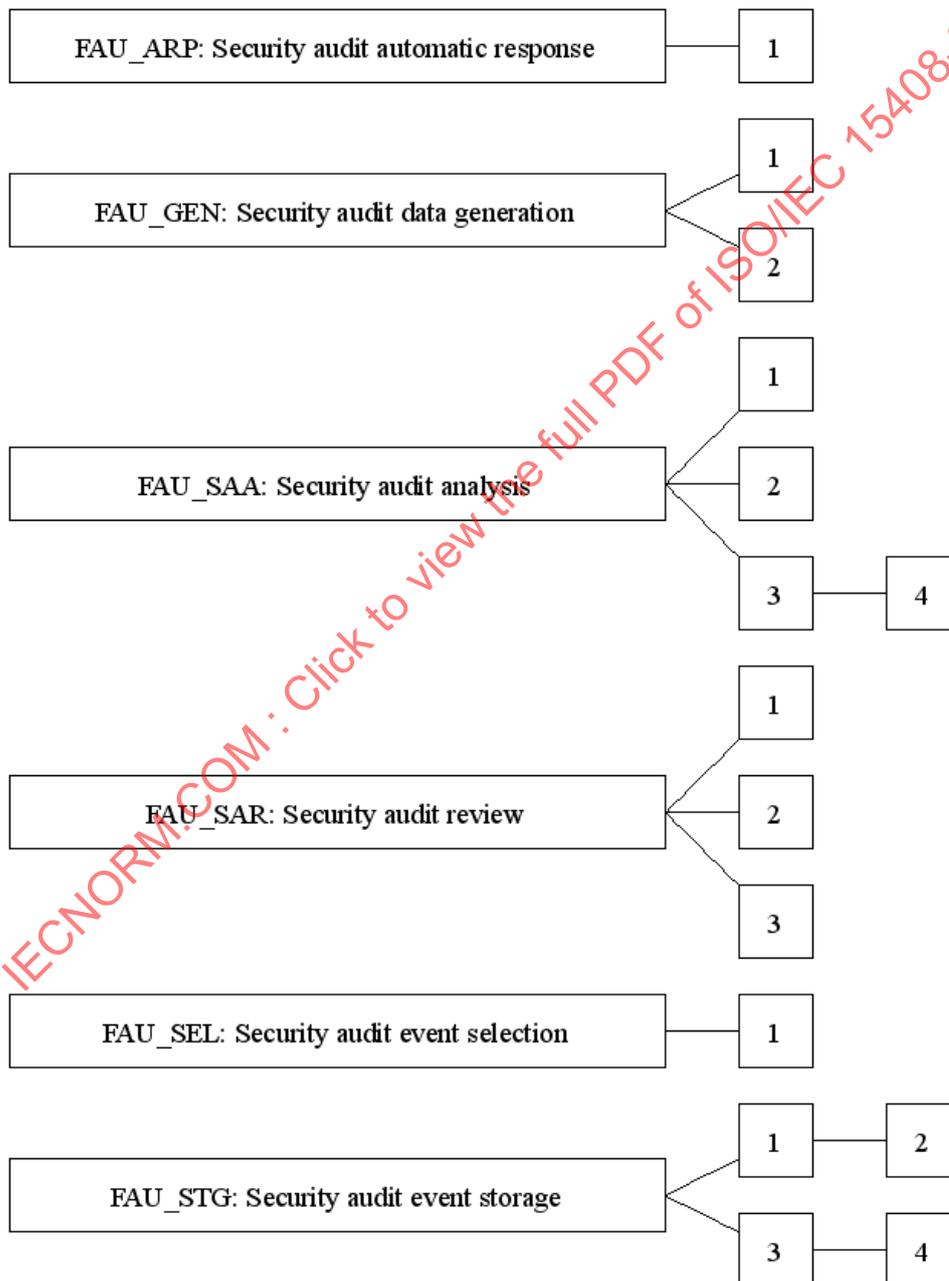


Figure 7 - FAU: Security audit class decomposition

7.1 Security audit automatic response (FAU_ARP)

7.1.1 Family Behaviour

This family defines the response to be taken in case of detected events indicative of a potential security violation.

7.1.2 Component levelling

At FAU_ARP.1 Security alarms, the TSF shall take actions in case a potential security violation is detected.

7.1.3 Management of FAU_ARP.1

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) the management (addition, removal, or modification) of actions.

7.1.4 Audit of FAU_ARP.1

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: Actions taken due to potential security violations.

7.1.5 FAU_ARP.1 Security alarms

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FAU_SAA.1 Potential violation analysis

7.1.5.1 FAU_ARP.1.1

The TSF shall take [assignment: *list of actions*] upon detection of a potential security violation.

7.2 Security audit data generation (FAU_GEN)

7.2.1 Family Behaviour

This family defines requirements for recording the occurrence of security relevant events that take place under TSF control. This family identifies the level of auditing, enumerates the types of events that shall be auditable by the TSF, and identifies the minimum set of audit-related information that should be provided within various audit record types.

7.2.2 Component levelling

FAU_GEN.1 Audit data generation defines the level of auditable events, and specifies the list of data that shall be recorded in each record.

At FAU_GEN.2 User identity association, the TSF shall associate auditable events to individual user identities.

7.2.3 Management of FAU_GEN.1, FAU_GEN.2

There are no management activities foreseen.

7.2.4 Audit of FAU_GEN.1, FAU_GEN.2

There are no auditable events foreseen.

7.2.5 FAU_GEN.1 Audit data generation

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FPT_STM.1 Reliable time stamps

7.2.5.1 FAU_GEN.1.1

The TSF shall be able to generate an audit record of the following auditable events:

- a) Start-up and shutdown of the audit functions;
- b) All auditable events for the [selection, choose one of: *minimum, basic, detailed, not specified*] level of audit; and
- c) [assignment: *other specifically defined auditable events*].

7.2.5.2 FAU_GEN.1.2

The TSF shall record within each audit record at least the following information:

- a) Date and time of the event, type of event, subject identity (if applicable), and the outcome (success or failure) of the event; and
- b) For each audit event type, based on the auditable event definitions of the functional components included in the PP/ST, [assignment: *other audit relevant information*].

7.2.6 FAU_GEN.2 User identity association

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FAU_GEN.1 Audit data generation
FIA_UID.1 Timing of identification

7.2.6.1 FAU_GEN.2.1

For audit events resulting from actions of identified users, the TSF shall be able to associate each auditable event with the identity of the user that caused the event.

7.3 Security audit analysis (FAU_SAA)

7.3.1 Family Behaviour

This family defines requirements for automated means that analyse system activity and audit data looking for possible or real security violations. This analysis may work in support of intrusion detection, or automatic response to a potential security violation.

The actions to be taken based on the detection can be specified using the Security audit automatic response (FAU_ARP) family as desired.

7.3.2 Component levelling

In FAU_SAA.1 Potential violation analysis, basic threshold detection on the basis of a fixed rule set is required.

In FAU_SAA.2 Profile based anomaly detection, the TSF maintains individual profiles of system usage, where a profile represents the historical patterns of usage performed by members of the profile target group. A profile target group refers to a group of one or more individuals (e.g. a single user, users who share a group ID or

group account, users who operate under an assigned role, users of an entire system or network node) who interact with the TSF. Each member of a profile target group is assigned an individual suspicion rating that represents how well that member's current activity corresponds to the established patterns of usage represented in the profile. This analysis can be performed at runtime or during a post-collection batch-mode analysis.

In FAU_SAA.3 Simple attack heuristics, the TSF shall be able to detect the occurrence of signature events that represent a significant threat to enforcement of the SFRs. This search for signature events may occur in real-time or during a post-collection batch-mode analysis.

In FAU_SAA.4 Complex attack heuristics, the TSF shall be able to represent and detect multi-step intrusion scenarios. The TSF is able to compare system events (possibly performed by multiple individuals) against event sequences known to represent entire intrusion scenarios. The TSF shall be able to indicate when a signature event or event sequence is found that indicates a potential violation of the enforcement of the SFRs.

7.3.3 Management of FAU_SAA.1

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) maintenance of the rules by (adding, modifying, deletion) of rules from the set of rules.

7.3.4 Management of FAU_SAA.2

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) maintenance (deletion, modification, addition) of the group of users in the profile target group.

7.3.5 Management of FAU_SAA.3

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) maintenance (deletion, modification, addition) of the subset of system events.

7.3.6 Management of FAU_SAA.4

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) maintenance (deletion, modification, addition) of the subset of system events;
- b) maintenance (deletion, modification, addition) of the set of sequence of system events.

7.3.7 Audit of FAU_SAA.1, FAU_SAA.2, FAU_SAA.3, FAU_SAA.4

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: Enabling and disabling of any of the analysis mechanisms;
- b) Minimal: Automated responses performed by the tool.

7.3.8 FAU_SAA.1 Potential violation analysis

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FAU_GEN.1 Audit data generation

7.3.8.1 FAU_SAA.1.1

The TSF shall be able to apply a set of rules in monitoring the audited events and based upon these rules indicate a potential violation of the enforcement of the SFRs.

7.3.8.2 FAU_SAA.1.2

The TSF shall enforce the following rules for monitoring audited events:

- a) Accumulation or combination of [assignment: *subset of defined auditable events*] known to indicate a potential security violation;
- b) [assignment: *any other rules*].

7.3.9 FAU_SAA.2 Profile based anomaly detection

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FIA_UID.1 Timing of identification

7.3.9.1 FAU_SAA.2.1

The TSF shall be able to maintain profiles of system usage, where an individual profile represents the historical patterns of usage performed by the member(s) of [assignment: *the profile target group*].

7.3.9.2 FAU_SAA.2.2

The TSF shall be able to maintain a suspicion rating associated with each user whose activity is recorded in a profile, where the suspicion rating represents the degree to which the user's current activity is found inconsistent with the established patterns of usage represented in the profile.

7.3.9.3 FAU_SAA.2.3

The TSF shall be able to indicate a possible violation of the enforcement of the SFRs when a user's suspicion rating exceeds the following threshold conditions [assignment: *conditions under which anomalous activity is reported by the TSF*].

7.3.10 FAU_SAA.3 Simple attack heuristics

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

7.3.10.1 FAU_SAA.3.1

The TSF shall be able to maintain an internal representation of the following signature events [assignment: *a subset of system events*] that may indicate a violation of the enforcement of the SFRs.

7.3.10.2 FAU_SAA.3.2

The TSF shall be able to compare the signature events against the record of system activity discernible from an examination of [assignment: *the information to be used to determine system activity*].

7.3.10.3 FAU_SAA.3.3

The TSF shall be able to indicate a potential violation of the enforcement of the SFRs when a system event is found to match a signature event that indicates a potential violation of the enforcement of the SFRs.

7.3.11 FAU_SAA.4 Complex attack heuristics

Hierarchical to: FAU_SAA.3 Simple attack heuristics

Dependencies: No dependencies.

7.3.11.1 FAU_SAA.4.1

The TSF shall be able to maintain an internal representation of the following **event sequences of known intrusion scenarios** [assignment: *list of sequences of system events whose occurrence are representative of known penetration scenarios*] and the following signature events [assignment: *a subset of system events*] that may indicate a **potential** violation of the enforcement of the SFRs.

7.3.11.2 FAU_SAA.4.2

The TSF shall be able to compare the signature events **and event sequences** against the record of system activity discernible from an examination of [assignment: *the information to be used to determine system activity*].

7.3.11.3 FAU_SAA.4.3

The TSF shall be able to indicate a potential violation of the enforcement of the SFRs when system **activity** is found to match a signature event **or event sequence** that indicates a potential violation of the enforcement of the SFRs.

7.4 Security audit review (FAU_SAR)

7.4.1 Family Behaviour

This family defines the requirements for audit tools that should be available to authorised users to assist in the review of audit data.

7.4.2 Component levelling

FAU_SAR.1 Audit review, provides the capability to read information from the audit records.

FAU_SAR.2 Restricted audit review, requires that there are no other users except those that have been identified in FAU_SAR.1 Audit review that can read the information.

FAU_SAR.3 Selectable audit review, requires audit review tools to select the audit data to be reviewed based on criteria.

7.4.3 Management of FAU_SAR.1

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) maintenance (deletion, modification, addition) of the group of users with read access right to the audit records.

7.4.4 Management of FAU_SAR.2, FAU_SAR.3

There are no management activities foreseen.

7.4.5 Audit of FAU_SAR.1

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Basic: Reading of information from the audit records.

7.4.6 Audit of FAU_SAR.2

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Basic: Unsuccessful attempts to read information from the audit records.

7.4.7 Audit of FAU_SAR.3

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Detailed: the parameters used for the viewing.

7.4.8 FAU_SAR.1 Audit review

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FAU_GEN.1 Audit data generation

7.4.8.1 FAU_SAR.1.1

The TSF shall provide [assignment: *authorised users*] with the capability to read [assignment: *list of audit information*] from the audit records.

7.4.8.2 FAU_SAR.1.2

The TSF shall provide the audit records in a manner suitable for the user to interpret the information.

7.4.9 FAU_SAR.2 Restricted audit review

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FAU_SAR.1 Audit review

7.4.9.1 FAU_SAR.2.1

The TSF shall prohibit all users read access to the audit records, except those users that have been granted explicit read-access.

7.4.10 FAU_SAR.3 Selectable audit review

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FAU_SAR.1 Audit review

7.4.10.1 FAU_SAR.3.1

The TSF shall provide the ability to apply [assignment: *methods of selection and/or ordering*] of audit data based on [assignment: *criteria with logical relations*].

7.5 Security audit event selection (FAU_SEL)

7.5.1 Family Behaviour

This family defines requirements to select the set of events to be audited during TOE operation from the set of all auditable events.

7.5.2 Component levelling

FAU_SEL.1 Selective audit, requires the ability to select the set of events to be audited from the set of all auditable events, identified in FAU_GEN.1 Audit data generation, based upon attributes to be specified by the PP/ST author.

7.5.3 Management of FAU_SEL.1

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) maintenance of the rights to view/modify the audit events.

7.5.4 Audit of FAU_SEL.1

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: All modifications to the audit configuration that occur while the audit collection functions are operating.

7.5.5 FAU_SEL.1 Selective audit

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FAU_GEN.1 Audit data generation

FMT_MTD.1 Management of TSF data

7.5.5.1 FAU_SEL.1.1

The TSF shall be able to select the set of audited events from the set of all auditable events based on the following attributes:

- a) [selection: *object identity, user identity, subject identity, host identity, event type*]
- b) [assignment: *list of additional attributes that audit selectivity is based upon*]

7.6 Security audit event storage (FAU_STG)

7.6.1 Family Behaviour

This family defines the requirements for the TSF to be able to create and maintain a secure audit trail. Stored audit records refers to those records within the audit trail, and not the audit records that have been retrieved (to temporary storage) through selection.

7.6.2 Component levelling

At FAU_STG.1 Protected audit trail storage, requirements are placed on the audit trail. It will be protected from unauthorised deletion and/or modification.

FAU_STG.2 Guarantees of audit data availability, specifies the guarantees that the TSF maintains over the audit data given the occurrence of an undesired condition.

FAU_STG.3 Action in case of possible audit data loss, specifies actions to be taken if a threshold on the audit trail is exceeded.

FAU_STG.4 Prevention of audit data loss, specifies actions in case the audit trail is full.

7.6.3 Management of FAU_STG.1

There are no management activities foreseen.

7.6.4 Management of FAU_STG.2

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) maintenance of the parameters that control the audit storage capability.

7.6.5 Management of FAU_STG.3

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) maintenance of the threshold;
- b) maintenance (deletion, modification, addition) of actions to be taken in case of imminent audit storage failure.

7.6.6 Management of FAU_STG.4

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) maintenance (deletion, modification, addition) of actions to be taken in case of audit storage failure.

7.6.7 Audit of FAU_STG.1, FAU_STG.2

There are no auditable events foreseen.

7.6.8 Audit of FAU_STG.3

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Basic: Actions taken due to exceeding of a threshold.

7.6.9 Audit of FAU_STG.4

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Basic: Actions taken due to the audit storage failure.

7.6.10 FAU_STG.1 Protected audit trail storage

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FAU_GEN.1 Audit data generation

7.6.10.1 FAU_STG.1.1

The TSF shall protect the stored audit records in the audit trail from unauthorised deletion.

7.6.10.2 FAU_STG.1.2

The TSF shall be able to [selection, choose one of: *prevent, detect*] unauthorised modifications to the stored audit records in the audit trail.

7.6.11 FAU_STG.2 Guarantees of audit data availability

Hierarchical to: FAU_STG.1 Protected audit trail storage

Dependencies: FAU_GEN.1 Audit data generation

7.6.11.1 FAU_STG.2.1

The TSF shall protect the stored audit records in the audit trail from unauthorised deletion.

7.6.11.2 FAU_STG.2.2

The TSF shall be able to [selection, choose one of: *prevent, detect*] unauthorised modifications to the stored audit records in the audit trail.

7.6.11.3 FAU_STG.2.3

The TSF shall ensure that [assignment: *metric for saving audit records*] stored audit records will be maintained when the following conditions occur: [selection: *audit storage exhaustion, failure, attack*]

7.6.12 FAU_STG.3 Action in case of possible audit data loss

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FAU_STG.1 Protected audit trail storage

7.6.12.1 FAU_STG.3.1

The TSF shall [assignment: *actions to be taken in case of possible audit storage failure*] if the audit trail exceeds [assignment: *pre-defined limit*].

7.6.13 FAU_STG.4 Prevention of audit data loss

Hierarchical to: FAU_STG.3 Action in case of possible audit data loss

Dependencies: FAU_STG.1 Protected audit trail storage

7.6.13.1 FAU_STG.4.1

The TSF shall [selection, choose one of: *“ignore audited events”, “prevent audited events, except those taken by the authorised user with special rights”, “overwrite the oldest stored audit records”*] and [assignment: *other actions to be taken in case of audit storage failure*] if the audit trail is full.

8 Class FCO: Communication

This class provides two families specifically concerned with assuring the identity of a party participating in a data exchange. These families are related to assuring the identity of the originator of transmitted information (proof of origin) and assuring the identity of the recipient of transmitted information (proof of receipt). These families ensure that an originator cannot deny having sent the message, nor can the recipient deny having received it.

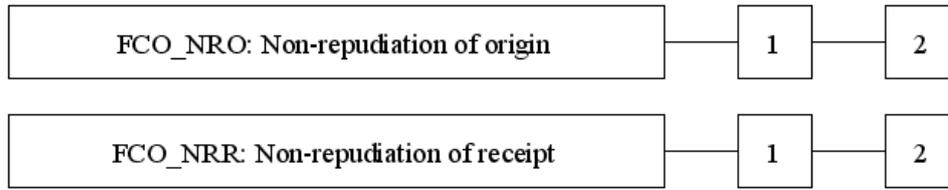


Figure 8 - FCO: Communication class decomposition

8.1 Non-repudiation of origin (FCO_NRO)

8.1.1 Family Behaviour

Non-repudiation of origin ensures that the originator of information cannot successfully deny having sent the information. This family requires that the TSF provide a method to ensure that a subject that receives information during a data exchange is provided with evidence of the origin of the information. This evidence can then be verified by either this subject or other subjects.

8.1.2 Component levelling

FCO_NRO.1 Selective proof of origin, requires the TSF to provide subjects with the capability to request evidence of the origin of information.

FCO_NRO.2 Enforced proof of origin, requires that the TSF always generate evidence of origin for transmitted information.

8.1.3 Management of FCO_NRO.1, FCO_NRO.2

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) The management of changes to information types, fields, originator attributes and recipients of evidence.

8.1.4 Audit of FCO_NRO.1

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: The identity of the user who requested that evidence of origin would be generated.
- b) Minimal: The invocation of the non-repudiation service.
- c) Basic: Identification of the information, the destination, and a copy of the evidence provided.
- d) Detailed: The identity of the user who requested a verification of the evidence.

8.1.5 Audit of FCO_NRO.2

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: The invocation of the non-repudiation service.
- b) Basic: Identification of the information, the destination, and a copy of the evidence provided.
- c) Detailed: The identity of the user who requested a verification of the evidence.

8.1.6 FCO_NRO.1 Selective proof of origin

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FIA_UID.1 Timing of identification

8.1.6.1 FCO_NRO.1.1

The TSF shall be able to generate evidence of origin for transmitted [assignment: *list of information types*] at the request of the [selection: *originator, recipient, [assignment: list of third parties]*].

8.1.6.2 FCO_NRO.1.2

The TSF shall be able to relate the [assignment: *list of attributes*] of the originator of the information, and the [assignment: *list of information fields*] of the information to which the evidence applies.

8.1.6.3 FCO_NRO.1.3

The TSF shall provide a capability to verify the evidence of origin of information to [selection: *originator, recipient, [assignment: list of third parties]*] given [assignment: *limitations on the evidence of origin*].

8.1.7 FCO_NRO.2 Enforced proof of origin

Hierarchical to: FCO_NRO.1 Selective proof of origin

Dependencies: FIA_UID.1 Timing of identification

8.1.7.1 FCO_NRO.2.1

The TSF shall **enforce the generation of** evidence of origin for transmitted [assignment: *list of information types*] **at all times**.

8.1.7.2 FCO_NRO.2.2

The TSF shall be able to relate the [assignment: *list of attributes*] of the originator of the information, and the [assignment: *list of information fields*] of the information to which the evidence applies.

8.1.7.3 FCO_NRO.2.3

The TSF shall provide a capability to verify the evidence of origin of information to [selection: *originator, recipient, [assignment: list of third parties]*] given [assignment: *limitations on the evidence of origin*].

8.2 Non-repudiation of receipt (FCO_NRR)

8.2.1 Family Behaviour

Non-repudiation of receipt ensures that the recipient of information cannot successfully deny receiving the information. This family requires that the TSF provide a method to ensure that a subject that transmits information during a data exchange is provided with evidence of receipt of the information. This evidence can then be verified by either this subject or other subjects.

8.2.2 Component levelling

FCO_NRR.1 Selective proof of receipt, requires the TSF to provide subjects with a capability to request evidence of the receipt of information.

FCO_NRR.2 Enforced proof of receipt, requires that the TSF always generate evidence of receipt for received information.

8.2.3 Management of FCO_NRR.1, FCO_NRR.2

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) The management of changes to information types, fields, originator attributes and third parties recipients of evidence.

8.2.4 Audit of FCO_NRR.1

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: The identity of the user who requested that evidence of receipt would be generated.
- b) Minimal: The invocation of the non-repudiation service.
- c) Basic: Identification of the information, the destination, and a copy of the evidence provided.
- d) Detailed: The identity of the user who requested a verification of the evidence.

8.2.5 Audit of FCO_NRR.2

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: The invocation of the non-repudiation service.
- b) Basic: Identification of the information, the destination, and a copy of the evidence provided.
- c) Detailed: The identity of the user who requested a verification of the evidence.

8.2.6 FCO_NRR.1 Selective proof of receipt

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FIA_UID.1 Timing of identification

8.2.6.1 FCO_NRR.1.1

The TSF shall be able to generate evidence of receipt for received [assignment: *list of information types*] at the request of the [selection: *originator, recipient, [assignment: list of third parties]*].

8.2.6.2 FCO_NRR.1.2

The TSF shall be able to relate the [assignment: *list of attributes*] of the recipient of the information, and the [assignment: *list of information fields*] of the information to which the evidence applies.

8.2.6.3 FCO_NRR.1.3

The TSF shall provide a capability to verify the evidence of receipt of information to [selection: *originator, recipient, [assignment: list of third parties]*] given [assignment: *limitations on the evidence of receipt*].

8.2.7 FCO_NRR.2 Enforced proof of receipt

Hierarchical to: FCO_NRR.1 Selective proof of receipt

Dependencies: FIA_UID.1 Timing of identification

8.2.7.1 FCO_NRR.2.1

The TSF shall enforce the generation of evidence of receipt for received [assignment: *list of information types*] at all times.

8.2.7.2 FCO_NRR.2.2

The TSF shall be able to relate the [assignment: *list of attributes*] of the recipient of the information, and the [assignment: *list of information fields*] of the information to which the evidence applies.

8.2.7.3 FCO_NRR.2.3

The TSF shall provide a capability to verify the evidence of receipt of information to [selection: *originator, recipient, [assignment: list of third parties]*] given [assignment: *limitations on the evidence of receipt*].

9 Class FCS: Cryptographic support

The TSF may employ cryptographic functionality to help satisfy several high-level security objectives. These include (but are not limited to): identification and authentication, non-repudiation, trusted path, trusted channel and data separation. This class is used when the TOE implements cryptographic functions, the implementation of which could be in hardware, firmware and/or software.

The FCS: Cryptographic support class is composed of two families: Cryptographic key management (FCS_CKM) and Cryptographic operation (FCS_COP). The Cryptographic key management (FCS_CKM) family addresses the management aspects of cryptographic keys, while the Cryptographic operation (FCS_COP) family is concerned with the operational use of those cryptographic keys.

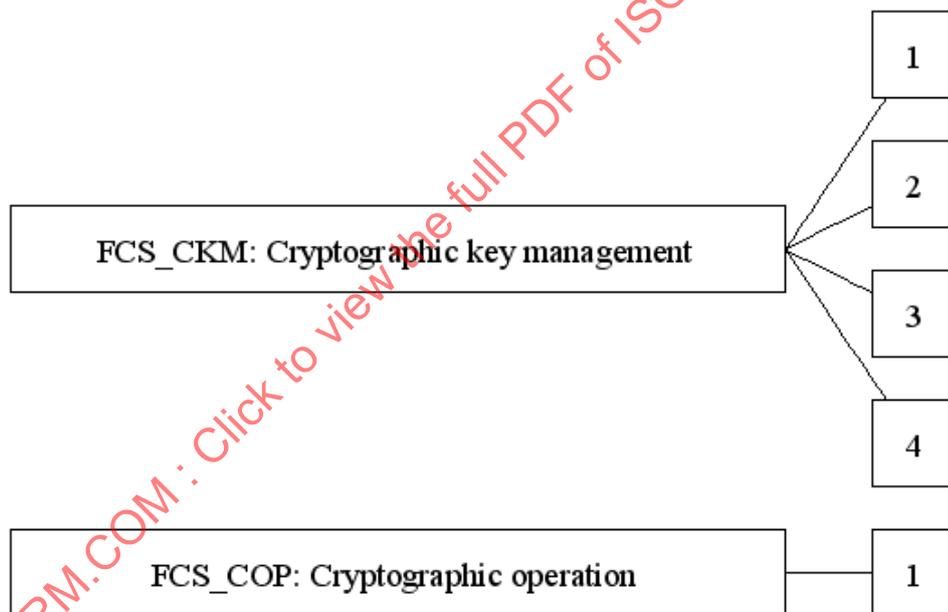


Figure 9 - FCS: Cryptographic support class decomposition

9.1 Cryptographic key management (FCS_CKM)

9.1.1 Family Behaviour

Cryptographic keys must be managed throughout their life cycle. This family is intended to support that lifecycle and consequently defines requirements for the following activities: cryptographic key generation, cryptographic key distribution, cryptographic key access and cryptographic key destruction. This family should be included whenever there are functional requirements for the management of cryptographic keys.

9.1.2 Component levelling

FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation, requires cryptographic keys to be generated in accordance with a specified algorithm and key sizes which can be based on an assigned standard.

FCS_CKM.2 Cryptographic key distribution, requires cryptographic keys to be distributed in accordance with a specified distribution method which can be based on an assigned standard.

FCS_CKM.3 Cryptographic key access, requires access to cryptographic keys to be performed in accordance with a specified access method which can be based on an assigned standard.

FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction, requires cryptographic keys to be destroyed in accordance with a specified destruction method which can be based on an assigned standard.

9.1.3 Management of FCS_CKM.1, FCS_CKM.2, FCS_CKM.3, FCS_CKM.4

There are no management activities foreseen.

9.1.4 Audit of FCS_CKM.1, FCS_CKM.2, FCS_CKM.3, FCS_CKM.4

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: Success and failure of the activity.
- b) Basic: The object attribute(s), and object value(s) excluding any sensitive information (e.g. secret or private keys).

9.1.5 FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: [FCS_CKM.2 Cryptographic key distribution, or
FCS_COP.1 Cryptographic operation]
FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction

9.1.5.1 FCS_CKM.1.1

The TSF shall generate cryptographic keys in accordance with a specified cryptographic key generation algorithm [assignment: *cryptographic key generation algorithm*] and specified cryptographic key sizes [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*] that meet the following: [assignment: *list of standards*].

9.1.6 FCS_CKM.2 Cryptographic key distribution

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: [FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or
FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or
FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation]
FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction

9.1.6.1 FCS_CKM.2.1

The TSF shall distribute cryptographic keys in accordance with a specified cryptographic key distribution method [assignment: *cryptographic key distribution method*] that meets the following: [assignment: *list of standards*].

9.1.7 FCS_CKM.3 Cryptographic key access

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: [FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or
FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or
FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation]
FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction

9.1.7.1 FCS_CKM.3.1

The TSF shall perform [assignment: *type of cryptographic key access*] in accordance with a specified cryptographic key access method [assignment: *cryptographic key access method*] that meets the following: [assignment: *list of standards*].

9.1.8 FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: [FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or
FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or
FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation]

9.1.8.1 FCS_CKM.4.1

The TSF shall destroy cryptographic keys in accordance with a specified cryptographic key destruction method [assignment: *cryptographic key destruction method*] that meets the following: [assignment: *list of standards*].

9.2 Cryptographic operation (FCS_COP)

9.2.1 Family Behaviour

In order for a cryptographic operation to function correctly, the operation must be performed in accordance with a specified algorithm and with a cryptographic key of a specified size. This family should be included whenever there are requirements for cryptographic operations to be performed.

Typical cryptographic operations include data encryption and/or decryption, digital signature generation and/or verification, cryptographic checksum generation for integrity and/or verification of checksum, secure hash (message digest), cryptographic key encryption and/or decryption, and cryptographic key agreement.

9.2.2 Component levelling

FCS_COP.1 Cryptographic operation, requires a cryptographic operation to be performed in accordance with a specified algorithm and with a cryptographic key of specified sizes. The specified algorithm and cryptographic key sizes can be based on an assigned standard.

9.2.3 Management of FCS_COP.1

There are no management activities foreseen.

9.2.4 Audit of FCS_COP.1

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: Success and failure, and the type of cryptographic operation.
- b) Basic: Any applicable cryptographic mode(s) of operation, subject attributes and object attributes.

9.2.5 FCS_COP.1 Cryptographic operation

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: [FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or
FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or
FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation]
FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction

9.2.5.1 FCS_COP.1.1

The TSF shall perform [assignment: *list of cryptographic operations*] in accordance with a specified cryptographic algorithm [assignment: *cryptographic algorithm*] and cryptographic key sizes [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*] that meet the following: [assignment: *list of standards*].

10 Class FDP: User data protection

This class contains families specifying requirements related to protecting user data. FDP: User data protection is split into four groups of families (listed below) that address user data within a TOE, during import, export, and storage as well as security attributes directly related to user data.

The families in this class are organised into four groups:

- a) User data protection security function policies:
 - Access control policy (FDP_ACC); and
 - Information flow control policy (FDP_IFC).

Components in these families permit the PP/ST author to name the user data protection security function policies and define the scope of control of the policy, necessary to address the security objectives. The names of these policies are meant to be used throughout the remainder of the functional components that have an operation that calls for an assignment or selection of an "access control SFP" or an "information flow control SFP". The rules that define the functionality of the named access control and information flow control SFPs will be defined in the Access control functions (FDP_ACF) and Information flow control functions (FDP_IFF) families (respectively).

- b) Forms of user data protection:
 - Access control functions (FDP_ACF);
 - Information flow control functions (FDP_IFF);
 - Internal TOE transfer (FDP_ITT);
 - Residual information protection (FDP_RIP);

- Rollback (FDP_ROL); and
 - Stored data integrity (FDP_SDI).
- c) Off-line storage, import and export:
- Data authentication (FDP_DAU);
 - Export from the TOE (FDP_ETC);
 - Import from outside of the TOE (FDP_ITC).

Components in these families address the trustworthy transfer into or out of the TOE.

d) Inter-TSF communication:

- Inter-TSF user data confidentiality transfer protection (FDP_UCT); and
- Inter-TSF user data integrity transfer protection (FDP_UIT).

Components in these families address communication between the TSF of the TOE and another trusted IT product.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of ISO/IEC 15408-2:2008

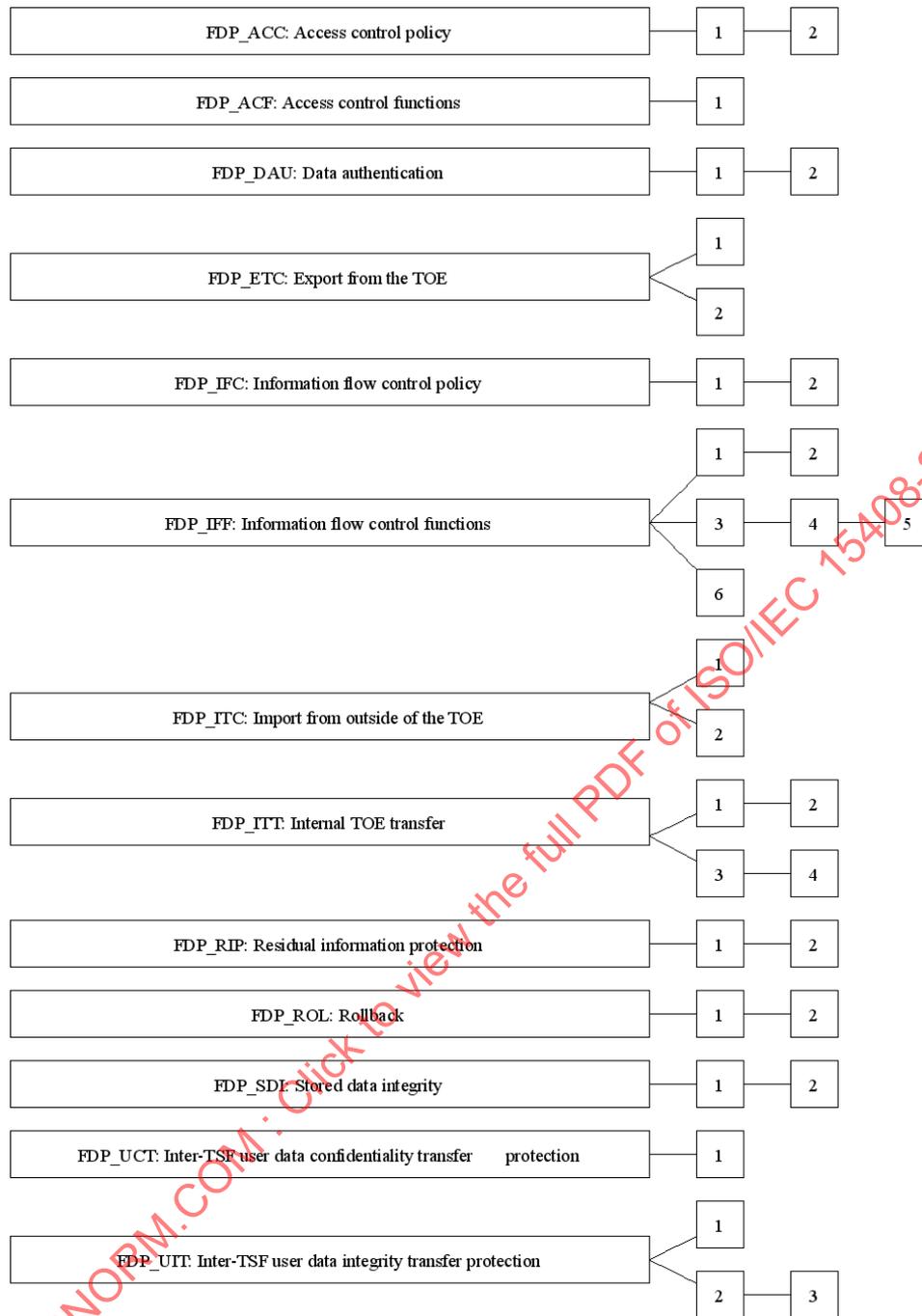


Figure 10 - FDP: User data protection class decomposition

10.1 Access control policy (FDP_ACC)

10.1.1 Family Behaviour

This family identifies the access control SFPs (by name) and defines the scope of control of the policies that form the identified access control portion of the SFRs related to the SFP. This scope of control is characterised by three sets: the subjects under control of the policy, the objects under control of the policy, and the operations among controlled subjects and controlled objects that are covered by the policy. The criteria allows multiple policies to exist, each having a unique name. This is accomplished by iterating components from this family once for each named access control policy. The rules that define the functionality of an access control SFP will be defined by other families such as Access control functions (FDP_ACF) and Export from the TOE (FDP_ETC). The names of the access control SFPs identified here in Access control

policy (FDP_ACC) are meant to be used throughout the remainder of the functional components that have an operation that calls for an assignment or selection of an “access control SFP.”

10.1.2 Component levelling

FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control, requires that each identified access control SFP be in place for a subset of the possible operations on a subset of the objects in the TOE.

FDP_ACC.2 Complete access control, requires that each identified access control SFP cover all operations on subjects and objects covered by that SFP. It further requires that all objects and operations protected by the TSF are covered by at least one identified access control SFP.

10.1.3 Management of FDP_ACC.1, FDP_ACC.2

There are no management activities foreseen.

10.1.4 Audit of FDP_ACC.1, FDP_ACC.2

There are no auditable events foreseen.

10.1.5 FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FDP_ACF.1 Security attribute based access control

10.1.5.1 FDP_ACC.1.1

The TSF shall enforce the [assignment: access control SFP] on [assignment: list of subjects, objects, and operations among subjects and objects covered by the SFP].

10.1.6 FDP_ACC.2 Complete access control

Hierarchical to: FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control

Dependencies: FDP_ACF.1 Security attribute based access control

10.1.6.1 FDP_ACC.2.1

The TSF shall enforce the [assignment: access control SFP] on [assignment: list of subjects and objects] and all operations among subjects and objects covered by the SFP.

10.1.6.2 FDP_ACC.2.2

The TSF shall ensure that all operations between any subject controlled by the TSF and any object controlled by the TSF are covered by an access control SFP.

10.2 Access control functions (FDP_ACF)

10.2.1 Family Behaviour

This family describes the rules for the specific functions that can implement an access control policy named in Access control policy (FDP_ACC). Access control policy (FDP_ACC) specifies the scope of control of the policy.

10.2.2 Component levelling

This family addresses security attribute usage and characteristics of policies. The component within this family is meant to be used to describe the rules for the function that implements the SFP as identified in Access

control policy (FDP_ACC). The PP/ST author may also iterate this component to address multiple policies in the TOE.

FDP_ACF.1 Security attribute based access control Security attribute based access control allows the TSF to enforce access based upon security attributes and named groups of attributes. Furthermore, the TSF may have the ability to explicitly authorise or deny access to an object based upon security attributes.

10.2.3 Management of FDP_ACF.1

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) Managing the attributes used to make explicit access or denial based decisions.

10.2.4 Audit of FDP_ACF.1

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: Successful requests to perform an operation on an object covered by the SFP.
- b) Basic: All requests to perform an operation on an object covered by the SFP.
- c) Detailed: The specific security attributes used in making an access check.

10.2.5 FDP_ACF.1 Security attribute based access control

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control
FMT_MSA.3 Static attribute initialisation

10.2.5.1 FDP_ACF.1.1

The TSF shall enforce the [assignment: *access control SFP*] to objects based on the following: [assignment: *list of subjects and objects controlled under the indicated SFP, and for each, the SFP-relevant security attributes, or named groups of SFP-relevant security attributes*].

10.2.5.2 FDP_ACF.1.2

The TSF shall enforce the following rules to determine if an operation among controlled subjects and controlled objects is allowed: [assignment: *rules governing access among controlled subjects and controlled objects using controlled operations on controlled objects*].

10.2.5.3 FDP_ACF.1.3

The TSF shall explicitly authorise access of subjects to objects based on the following additional rules: [assignment: *rules, based on security attributes, that explicitly authorise access of subjects to objects*].

10.2.5.4 FDP_ACF.1.4

The TSF shall explicitly deny access of subjects to objects based on the [assignment: *rules, based on security attributes, that explicitly deny access of subjects to objects*].

10.3 Data authentication (FDP_DAU)

10.3.1 Family Behaviour

Data authentication permits an entity to accept responsibility for the authenticity of information (e.g., by digitally signing it). This family provides a method of providing a guarantee of the validity of a specific unit of data that can be subsequently used to verify that the information content has not been forged or fraudulently modified. In contrast to FAU: Security audit, this family is intended to be applied to "static" data rather than data that is being transferred.

10.3.2 Component levelling

FDP_DAU.1 Basic Data Authentication, requires that the TSF is capable of generating a guarantee of authenticity of the information content of objects (e.g. documents).

FDP_DAU.2 Data Authentication with Identity of Guarantor additionally requires that the TSF is capable of establishing the identity of the subject who provided the guarantee of authenticity.

10.3.3 Management of FDP_DAU.1, FDP_DAU.2

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) The assignment or modification of the objects for which data authentication may apply could be configurable.

10.3.4 Audit of FDP_DAU.1

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: Successful generation of validity evidence.
- b) Basic: Unsuccessful generation of validity evidence.
- c) Detailed: The identity of the subject that requested the evidence.

10.3.5 Audit of FDP_DAU.2

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: Successful generation of validity evidence.
- b) Basic: Unsuccessful generation of validity evidence.
- c) Detailed: The identity of the subject that requested the evidence.
- d) Detailed: The identity of the subject that generated the evidence.

10.3.6 FDP_DAU.1 Basic Data Authentication

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

10.3.6.1 FDP_DAU.1.1

The TSF shall provide a capability to generate evidence that can be used as a guarantee of the validity of [assignment: *list of objects or information types*].

10.3.6.2 FDP_DAU.1.2

The TSF shall provide [assignment: *list of subjects*] with the ability to verify evidence of the validity of the indicated information.

10.3.7 FDP_DAU.2 Data Authentication with Identity of Guarantor

Hierarchical to: FDP_DAU.1 Basic Data Authentication

Dependencies: FIA_UID.1 Timing of identification

10.3.7.1 FDP_DAU.2.1

The TSF shall provide a capability to generate evidence that can be used as a guarantee of the validity of [assignment: *list of objects or information types*].

10.3.7.2 FDP_DAU.2.2

The TSF shall provide [assignment: *list of subjects*] with the ability to verify evidence of the validity of the indicated information **and the identity of the user that generated the evidence.**

10.4 Export from the TOE (FDP_ETC)

10.4.1 Family Behaviour

This family defines functions for TSF-mediated exporting of user data from the TOE such that its security attributes and protection either can be explicitly preserved or can be ignored once it has been exported. It is concerned with limitations on export and with the association of security attributes with the exported user data.

10.4.2 Component levelling

FDP_ETC.1 Export of user data without security attributes, requires that the TSF enforce the appropriate SFPs when exporting user data outside the TSF. User data that is exported by this function is exported without its associated security attributes.

FDP_ETC.2 Export of user data with security attributes, requires that the TSF enforce the appropriate SFPs using a function that accurately and unambiguously associates security attributes with the user data that is exported.

10.4.3 Management of FDP_ETC.1

There are no management activities foreseen.

10.4.4 Management of FDP_ETC.2

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) The additional exportation control rules could be configurable by a user in a defined role.

10.4.5 Audit of FDP_ETC.1, FDP_ETC.2

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: Successful export of information.
- b) Basic: All attempts to export information.

10.4.6 FDP_ETC.1 Export of user data without security attributes

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: [FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control, or
FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control]

10.4.6.1 FDP_ETC.1.1

The TSF shall enforce the [assignment: *access control SFP(s) and/or information flow control SFP(s)*] when exporting user data, controlled under the SFP(s), outside of the TOE.

10.4.6.2 FDP_ETC.1.2

The TSF shall export the user data without the user data's associated security attributes

10.4.7 FDP_ETC.2 Export of user data with security attributes

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: [FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control, or
FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control]

10.4.7.1 FDP_ETC.2.1

The TSF shall enforce the [assignment: *access control SFP(s) and/or information flow control SFP(s)*] when exporting user data, controlled under the SFP(s), outside of the TOE.

10.4.7.2 FDP_ETC.2.2

The TSF shall export the user data with the user data's associated security attributes.

10.4.7.3 FDP_ETC.2.3

The TSF shall ensure that the security attributes, when exported outside the TOE, are unambiguously associated with the exported user data.

10.4.7.4 FDP_ETC.2.4

The TSF shall enforce the following rules when user data is exported from the TOE: [assignment: *additional exportation control rules*].

10.5 Information flow control policy (FDP_IFC)**10.5.1 Family Behaviour**

This family identifies the information flow control SFPs (by name) and defines the scope of control for each named information flow control SFP. This scope of control is characterised by three sets: the subjects under control of the policy, the information under control of the policy, and operations which cause controlled information to flow to and from controlled subjects covered by the policy. The criteria allows multiple policies to exist, each having a unique name. This is accomplished by iterating components from this family once for each named information flow control policy. The rules that define the functionality of an information flow control SFP will be defined by other families such as Information flow control functions (FDP_IFF) and Export from the TOE (FDP_ETC). The names of the information flow control SFPs identified here in Information flow control policy (FDP_IFC) are meant to be used throughout the remainder of the functional components that have an operation that calls for an assignment or selection of an "information flow control SFP."

The TSF mechanism controls the flow of information in accordance with the information flow control SFP. Operations that would change the security attributes of information are not generally permitted as this would be in violation of an information flow control SFP. However, such operations may be permitted as exceptions to the information flow control SFP if explicitly specified.

10.5.2 Component levelling

FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control, requires that each identified information flow control SFPs be in place for a subset of the possible operations on a subset of information flows in the TOE.

FDP_IFC.2 Complete information flow control, requires that each identified information flow control SFP cover all operations on subjects and information covered by that SFP. It further requires that all information flows and operations controlled by the TSF are covered by at least one identified information flow control SFP.

10.5.3 Management of FDP_IFC.1, FDP_IFC.2

There are no management activities foreseen.

10.5.4 Audit of FDP_IFC.1, FDP_IFC.2

There are no auditable events foreseen.

10.5.5 FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FDP_IFF.1 Simple security attributes

10.5.5.1 FDP_IFC.1.1

The TSF shall enforce the [assignment: *information flow control SFP*] on [assignment: *list of subjects, information, and operations that cause controlled information to flow to and from controlled subjects covered by the SFP*].

10.5.6 FDP_IFC.2 Complete information flow control

Hierarchical to: FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control

Dependencies: FDP_IFF.1 Simple security attributes

10.5.6.1 FDP_IFC.2.1

The TSF shall enforce the [assignment: *information flow control SFP*] on [assignment: *list of subjects and information*] and all operations that cause that information to flow to and from subjects covered by the SFP.

10.5.6.2 FDP_IFC.2.2

The TSF shall ensure that all operations that cause any information in the TOE to flow to and from any subject in the TOE are covered by an information flow control SFP.

10.6 Information flow control functions (FDP_IFF)

10.6.1 Family Behaviour

This family describes the rules for the specific functions that can implement the information flow control SFPs named in Information flow control policy (FDP_IFC), which also specifies the scope of control of the policy. It consists of two kinds of requirements: one addressing the common information flow function issues, and a second addressing illicit information flows (i.e. covert channels). This division arises because the issues concerning illicit information flows are, in some sense, orthogonal to the rest of an information flow control

SFP. By their nature they circumvent the information flow control SFP resulting in a violation of the policy. As such, they require special functions to either limit or prevent their occurrence.

10.6.2 Component levelling

FDP_IFF.1 Simple security attributes, requires security attributes on information, and on subjects that cause that information to flow and on subjects that act as recipients of that information. It specifies the rules that must be enforced by the function, and describes how security attributes are derived by the function.

FDP_IFF.2 Hierarchical security attributes expands on the requirements of FDP_IFF.1 Simple security attributes by requiring that all information flow control SFPs in the set of SFRs use hierarchical security attributes that form a lattice (as defined in mathematics). FDP_IFF.2.6 is derived from the mathematical properties of a lattice. A lattice consists of a set of elements with an ordering relationship with the property defined in the first bullet, a greatest lower bound which is the unique element in the set that is greater or equal (in the ordering relationship) than any other element of the lattice, and a least upper bound, which is the unique element in the set that is smaller or equal than any other element of the lattice.

FDP_IFF.3 Limited illicit information flows, requires the SFP to cover illicit information flows, but not necessarily eliminate them.

FDP_IFF.4 Partial elimination of illicit information flows, requires the SFP to cover the elimination of some (but not necessarily all) illicit information flows.

FDP_IFF.5 No illicit information flows, requires SFP to cover the elimination of all illicit information flows.

FDP_IFF.6 Illicit information flow monitoring, requires the SFP to monitor illicit information flows for specified and maximum capacities.

10.6.3 Management of FDP_IFF.1, FDP_IFF.2

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) Managing the attributes used to make explicit access based decisions.

10.6.4 Management of FDP_IFF.3, FDP_IFF.4, FDP_IFF.5

There are no management activities foreseen.

10.6.5 Management of FDP_IFF.6

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) The enabling or disabling of the monitoring function.
- b) Modification of the maximum capacity at which the monitoring occurs.

10.6.6 Audit of FDP_IFF.1, FDP_IFF.2, FDP_IFF.5

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: Decisions to permit requested information flows.
- b) Basic: All decisions on requests for information flow.
- c) Detailed: The specific security attributes used in making an information flow enforcement decision.
- d) Detailed: Some specific subsets of the information that has flowed based upon policy goals (e.g. auditing of downgraded material).

10.6.7 Audit of FDP_IFF.3, FDP_IFF.4, FDP_IFF.6

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: Decisions to permit requested information flows.
- b) Basic: All decisions on requests for information flow.
- c) Basic: The use of identified illicit information flow channels.
- d) Detailed: The specific security attributes used in making an information flow enforcement decision.
- e) Detailed: Some specific subsets of the information that has flowed based upon policy goals (e.g. auditing of downgraded material).
- f) Detailed: The use of identified illicit information flow channels with estimated maximum capacity exceeding a specified value.

10.6.8 FDP_IFF.1 Simple security attributes

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control

FMT_MSA.3 Static attribute initialisation

10.6.8.1 FDP_IFF.1.1

The TSF shall enforce the [assignment: *information flow control SFP*] based on the following types of subject and information security attributes: [assignment: *list of subjects and information controlled under the indicated SFP, and for each, the security attributes*].

10.6.8.2 FDP_IFF.1.2

The TSF shall permit an information flow between a controlled subject and controlled information via a controlled operation if the following rules hold: [assignment: *for each operation, the security attribute-based relationship that must hold between subject and information security attributes*].

10.6.8.3 FDP_IFF.1.3

The TSF shall enforce the [assignment: *additional information flow control SFP rules*].

10.6.8.4 FDP_IFF.1.4

The TSF shall explicitly authorise an information flow based on the following rules: [assignment: *rules, based on security attributes, that explicitly authorise information flows*].

10.6.8.5 FDP_IFF.1.5

The TSF shall explicitly deny an information flow based on the following rules: [assignment: *rules, based on security attributes, that explicitly deny information flows*].

10.6.9 FDP_IFF.2 Hierarchical security attributes

Hierarchical to: FDP_IFF.1 Simple security attributes

Dependencies: FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control

FMT_MSA.3 Static attribute initialisation

10.6.9.1 FDP_IFF.2.1

The TSF shall enforce the [assignment: *information flow control SFP*] based on the following types of subject and information security attributes: [assignment: *list of subjects and information controlled under the indicated SFP, and for each, the security attributes*].

10.6.9.2 FDP_IFF.2.2

The TSF shall permit an information flow between a controlled subject and controlled information via a controlled operation if the following rules, **based on the ordering relationships between security attributes** hold: [assignment: *for each operation, the security attribute-based relationship that must hold between subject and information security attributes*].

10.6.9.3 FDP_IFF.2.3

The TSF shall enforce the [assignment: *additional information flow control SFP rules*].

10.6.9.4 FDP_IFF.2.4

The TSF shall explicitly authorise an information flow based on the following rules: [assignment: *rules, based on security attributes, that explicitly authorise information flows*].

10.6.9.5 FDP_IFF.2.5

The TSF shall explicitly deny an information flow based on the following rules: [assignment: *rules, based on security attributes, that explicitly deny information flows*].

10.6.9.6 FDP_IFF.2.6

The TSF shall enforce the following relationships for any two valid information flow control security attributes:

- a) **There exists an ordering function that, given two valid security attributes, determines if the security attributes are equal, if one security attribute is greater than the other, or if the security attributes are incomparable; and**
- b) **There exists a “least upper bound” in the set of security attributes, such that, given any two valid security attributes, there is a valid security attribute that is greater than or equal to the two valid security attributes; and**
- c) **There exists a “greatest lower bound” in the set of security attributes, such that, given any two valid security attributes, there is a valid security attribute that is not greater than the two valid security attributes.**

10.6.10 FDP_IFF.3 Limited illicit information flows

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control

10.6.10.1 FDP_IFF.3.1

The TSF shall enforce the [assignment: *information flow control SFP*] to limit the capacity of [assignment: *types of illicit information flows*] to a [assignment: *maximum capacity*].

10.6.11 FDP_IFF.4 Partial elimination of illicit information flows

Hierarchical to: FDP_IFF.3 Limited illicit information flows

Dependencies: FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control

10.6.11.1 FDP_IFF.4.1

The TSF shall enforce the [assignment: *information flow control SFP*] to limit the capacity of [assignment: *types of illicit information flows*] to a [assignment: *maximum capacity*].

10.6.11.2 FDP_IFF.4.2

The TSF shall prevent [assignment: *types of illicit information flows*].

10.6.12 FDP_IFF.5 No illicit information flows

Hierarchical to: FDP_IFF.4 Partial elimination of illicit information flows

Dependencies: FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control

10.6.12.1 FDP_IFF.5.1

The TSF shall ensure that no illicit information flows exist to circumvent [assignment: *name of information flow control SFP*].

10.6.13 FDP_IFF.6 Illicit information flow monitoring

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control

10.6.13.1 FDP_IFF.6.1

The TSF shall enforce the [assignment: *information flow control SFP*] to monitor [assignment: *types of illicit information flows*] when it exceeds the [assignment: *maximum capacity*].

10.7 Import from outside of the TOE (FDP_ITC)

10.7.1 Family Behaviour

This family defines the mechanisms for TSF-mediated importing of user data into the TOE such that it has appropriate security attributes and is appropriately protected. It is concerned with limitations on importation, determination of desired security attributes, and interpretation of security attributes associated with the user data.

10.7.2 Component levelling

FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, requires that the security attributes correctly represent the user data and are supplied separately from the object.

FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, requires that security attributes correctly represent the user data and are accurately and unambiguously associated with the user data imported from outside the TOE.

10.7.3 Management of FDP_ITC.1, FDP_ITC.2

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) The modification of the additional control rules used for import.

10.7.4 Audit of FDP_ITC.1, FDP_ITC.2

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: Successful import of user data, including any security attributes.
- b) Basic: All attempts to import user data, including any security attributes.
- c) Detailed: The specification of security attributes for imported user data supplied by an authorised user.

10.7.5 FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: [FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control, or
FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control]
FMT_MSA.3 Static attribute initialisation

10.7.5.1 FDP_ITC.1.1

The TSF shall enforce the [assignment: *access control SFP(s) and/or information flow control SFP(s)*] when importing user data, controlled under the SFP, from outside of the TOE.

10.7.5.2 FDP_ITC.1.2

The TSF shall ignore any security attributes associated with the user data when imported from outside the TOE.

10.7.5.3 FDP_ITC.1.3

The TSF shall enforce the following rules when importing user data controlled under the SFP from outside the TOE: [assignment: *additional importation control rules*].

10.7.6 FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: [FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control, or
FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control]
[FTP_ITC.1 Inter-TSF trusted channel, or
FTP_TRP.1 Trusted path]
FPT_TDC.1 Inter-TSF basic TSF data consistency

10.7.6.1 FDP_ITC.2.1

The TSF shall enforce the [assignment: *access control SFP(s) and/or information flow control SFP(s)*] when importing user data, controlled under the SFP, from outside of the TOE.

10.7.6.2 FDP_ITC.2.2

The TSF shall use the security attributes associated with the imported user data.

10.7.6.3 FDP_ITC.2.3

The TSF shall ensure that the protocol used provides for the unambiguous association between the security attributes and the user data received.

10.7.6.4 FDP_ITC.2.4

The TSF shall ensure that interpretation of the security attributes of the imported user data is as intended by the source of the user data.

10.7.6.5 FDP_ITC.2.5

The TSF shall enforce the following rules when importing user data controlled under the SFP from outside the TOE: [assignment: *additional importation control rules*].

10.8 Internal TOE transfer (FDP_ITT)

10.8.1 Family Behaviour

This family provides requirements that address protection of user data when it is transferred between separated parts of a TOE across an internal channel. This may be contrasted with the Inter-TSF user data confidentiality transfer protection (FDP_UCT) and Inter-TSF user data integrity transfer protection (FDP_UIT) families, which provide protection for user data when it is transferred between distinct TSFs across an external channel, and Export from the TOE (FDP_ETC) and Import from outside of the TOE (FDP_ITC), which address TSF-mediated transfer of data to or from outside the TOE.

10.8.2 Component levelling

FDP_ITT.1 Basic internal transfer protection, requires that user data be protected when transmitted between parts of the TOE.

FDP_ITT.2 Transmission separation by attribute, requires separation of data based on the value of SFP-relevant attributes in addition to the first component.

FDP_ITT.3 Integrity monitoring, requires that the TSF monitor user data transmitted between parts of the TOE for identified integrity errors.

FDP_ITT.4 Attribute-based integrity monitoring expands on the third component by allowing the form of integrity monitoring to differ by SFP-relevant attribute.

10.8.3 Management of FDP_ITT.1, FDP_ITT.2

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) If the TSF provides multiple methods to protect user data during transmission between physically separated parts of the TOE, the TSF could provide a pre-defined role with the ability to select the method that will be used.

10.8.4 Management of FDP_ITT.3, FDP_ITT.4

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) The specification of the actions to be taken upon detection of an integrity error could be configurable.

10.8.5 Audit of FDP_ITT.1, FDP_ITT.2

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: Successful transfers of user data, including identification of the protection method used.
- b) Basic: All attempts to transfer user data, including the protection method used and any errors that occurred.

10.8.6 Audit of FDP_ITT.3, FDP_ITT.4

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: Successful transfers of user data, including identification of the integrity protection method used.
- b) Basic: All attempts to transfer user data, including the integrity protection method used and any errors that occurred.
- c) Basic: Unauthorised attempts to change the integrity protection method.
- d) Detailed: The action taken upon detection of an integrity error.

10.8.7 FDP_ITT.1 Basic internal transfer protection

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: [FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control, or
FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control]

10.8.7.1 FDP_ITT.1.1

The TSF shall enforce the [assignment: *access control SFP(s) and/or information flow control SFP(s)*] to prevent the [selection: *disclosure, modification, loss of use*] of user data when it is transmitted between physically-separated parts of the TOE.

10.8.8 FDP_ITT.2 Transmission separation by attribute

Hierarchical to: FDP_ITT.1 Basic internal transfer protection

Dependencies: [FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control, or
FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control]

10.8.8.1 FDP_ITT.2.1

The TSF shall enforce the [assignment: *access control SFP(s) and/or information flow control SFP(s)*] to prevent the [selection: *disclosure, modification, loss of use*] of user data when it is transmitted between physically-separated parts of the TOE.

10.8.8.2 FDP_ITT.2.2

The TSF shall separate data controlled by the SFP(s) when transmitted between physically-separated parts of the TOE, based on the values of the following: [assignment: *security attributes that require separation*].

10.8.9 FDP_ITT.3 Integrity monitoring

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: [FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control, or
FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control]
FDP_ITT.1 Basic internal transfer protection

10.8.9.1 FDP_ITT.3.1

The TSF shall enforce the [assignment: *access control SFP(s) and/or information flow control SFP(s)*] to monitor user data transmitted between physically-separated parts of the TOE for the following errors: [assignment: *integrity errors*].

10.8.9.2 FDP_ITT.3.2

Upon detection of a data integrity error, the TSF shall [assignment: *specify the action to be taken upon integrity error*].

10.8.10 FDP_ITT.4 Attribute-based integrity monitoring

Hierarchical to: FDP_ITT.3 Integrity monitoring

Dependencies: [FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control, or
FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control]
FDP_ITT.2 Transmission separation by attribute

10.8.10.1 FDP_ITT.4.1

The TSF shall enforce the [assignment: *access control SFP(s) and/or information flow control SFP(s)*] to monitor user data transmitted between physically-separated parts of the TOE for the following errors: [assignment: *integrity errors*], based on the following attributes: [assignment: *security attributes that require separate transmission channels*].

10.8.10.2 FDP_ITT.4.2

Upon detection of a data integrity error, the TSF shall [assignment: *specify the action to be taken upon integrity error*].

10.9 Residual information protection (FDP_RIP)

10.9.1 Family Behaviour

This family addresses the need to ensure that any data contained in a resource is not available when the resource is de-allocated from one object and reallocated to a different object. This family requires protection for any data contained in a resource that has been logically deleted or released, but may still be present within the TSF-controlled resource which in turn may be re-allocated to another object.

10.9.2 Component levelling

FDP_RIP.1 Subset residual information protection, requires that the TSF ensure that any residual information content of any resources is unavailable to a defined subset of the objects controlled by the TSF upon the resource's allocation or deallocation.

FDP_RIP.2 Full residual information protection, requires that the TSF ensure that any residual information content of any resources is unavailable to all objects upon the resource's allocation or deallocation.

10.9.3 Management of FDP_RIP.1, FDP_RIP.2

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) The choice of when to perform residual information protection (i.e. upon allocation or deallocation) could be made configurable within the TOE.

10.9.4 Audit of FDP_RIP.1, FDP_RIP.2

There are no auditable events foreseen.

10.9.5 FDP_RIP.1 Subset residual information protection

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

10.9.5.1 FDP_RIP.1.1

The TSF shall ensure that any previous information content of a resource is made unavailable upon the [selection: *allocation of the resource to, deallocation of the resource from*] the following objects: [assignment: *list of objects*].

10.9.6 FDP_RIP.2 Full residual information protection

Hierarchical to: FDP_RIP.1 Subset residual information protection

Dependencies: No dependencies.

10.9.6.1 FDP_RIP.2.1

The TSF shall ensure that any previous information content of a resource is made unavailable upon the [selection: *allocation of the resource to, deallocation of the resource from*] all objects.

10.10 Rollback (FDP_ROL)

10.10.1 Family Behaviour

The rollback operation involves undoing the last operation or a series of operations, bounded by some limit, such as a period of time, and return to a previous known state. Rollback provides the ability to undo the effects of an operation or series of operations to preserve the integrity of the user data.

10.10.2 Component levelling

FDP_ROL.1 Basic rollback addresses a need to roll back or undo a limited number of operations within the defined bounds.

FDP_ROL.2 Advanced rollback addresses the need to roll back or undo all operations within the defined bounds.

10.10.3 Management of FDP_ROL.1, FDP_ROL.2

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) The boundary limit to which rollback may be performed could be a configurable item within the TOE.

- b) Permission to perform a rollback operation could be restricted to a well defined role.

10.10.4 Audit of FDP_ROL.1, FDP_ROL.2

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: All successful rollback operations.
- b) Basic: All attempts to perform rollback operations.
- c) Detailed: All attempts to perform rollback operations, including identification of the types of operations rolled back.

10.10.5 FDP_ROL.1 Basic rollback

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: [FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control, or
FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control]

10.10.5.1 FDP_ROL.1.1

The TSF shall enforce [assignment: *access control SFP(s) and/or information flow control SFP(s)*] to permit the rollback of the [assignment: *list of operations*] on the [assignment: *information and/or list of objects*].

10.10.5.2 FDP_ROL.1.2

The TSF shall permit operations to be rolled back within the [assignment: *boundary limit to which rollback may be performed*].

10.10.6 FDP_ROL.2 Advanced rollback

Hierarchical to: FDP_ROL.1 Basic rollback

Dependencies: [FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control, or
FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control]

10.10.6.1 FDP_ROL.2.1

The TSF shall enforce [assignment: *access control SFP(s) and/or information flow control SFP(s)*] to permit the rollback of **all the operations** on the [assignment: *list of objects*].

10.10.6.2 FDP_ROL.2.2

The TSF shall permit operations to be rolled back within the [assignment: *boundary limit to which rollback may be performed*].

10.11 Stored data integrity (FDP_SDI)

10.11.1 Family Behaviour

This family provides requirements that address protection of user data while it is stored within containers controlled by the TSF. Integrity errors may affect user data stored in memory, or in a storage device. This family differs from Internal TOE transfer (FDP_ITT) which protects the user data from integrity errors while being transferred within the TOE.

10.11.2 Component levelling

FDP_SDI.1 Stored data integrity monitoring, requires that the TSF monitor user data stored within containers controlled by the TSF for identified integrity errors.

FDP_SDI.2 Stored data integrity monitoring and action adds the additional capability to the first component by allowing for actions to be taken as a result of an error detection.

10.11.3 Management of FDP_SDI.1

There are no management activities foreseen.

10.11.4 Management of FDP_SDI.2

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) The actions to be taken upon the detection of an integrity error could be configurable.

10.11.5 Audit of FDP_SDI.1

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: Successful attempts to check the integrity of user data, including an indication of the results of the check.
- b) Basic: All attempts to check the integrity of user data, including an indication of the results of the check, if performed.
- c) Detailed: The type of integrity error that occurred.

10.11.6 Audit of FDP_SDI.2

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: Successful attempts to check the integrity of user data, including an indication of the results of the check.
- b) Basic: All attempts to check the integrity of user data, including an indication of the results of the check, if performed.
- c) Detailed: The type of integrity error that occurred.
- d) Detailed: The action taken upon detection of an integrity error.

10.11.7 FDP_SDI.1 Stored data integrity monitoring

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

10.11.7.1 FDP_SDI.1.1

The TSF shall monitor user data stored in containers controlled by the TSF for [assignment: *integrity errors*] on all objects, based on the following attributes: [assignment: *user data attributes*].

10.11.8 FDP_SDI.2 Stored data integrity monitoring and action

Hierarchical to: FDP_SDI.1 Stored data integrity monitoring

Dependencies: No dependencies.

10.11.8.1 FDP_SDI.2.1

The TSF shall monitor user data stored in containers controlled by the TSF for [assignment: *integrity errors*] on all objects, based on the following attributes: [assignment: *user data attributes*].

10.11.8.2 FDP_SDI.2.2

Upon detection of a data integrity error, the TSF shall [assignment: *action to be taken*].

10.12 Inter-TSF user data confidentiality transfer protection (FDP_UCT)

10.12.1 Family Behaviour

This family defines the requirements for ensuring the confidentiality of user data when it is transferred using an external channel between the TOE and another trusted IT product.

10.12.2 Component levelling

In FDP_UCT.1 Basic data exchange confidentiality, the goal is to provide protection from disclosure of user data while in transit.

10.12.3 Management of FDP_UCT.1

There are no management activities foreseen.

10.12.4 Audit of FDP_UCT.1

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: The identity of any user or subject using the data exchange mechanisms.
- b) Basic: The identity of any unauthorised user or subject attempting to use the data exchange mechanisms.
- c) Basic: A reference to the names or other indexing information useful in identifying the user data that was transmitted or received. This could include security attributes associated with the information.

10.12.5 FDP_UCT.1 Basic data exchange confidentiality

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: [FTP_ITC.1 Inter-TSF trusted channel, or
FTP_TRP.1 Trusted path]
[FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control, or
FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control]

10.12.5.1 FDP_UCT.1.1

The TSF shall enforce the [assignment: *access control SFP(s) and/or information flow control SFP(s)*] to be able to [selection: *transmit, receive*] user data in a manner protected from unauthorised disclosure.

10.13 Inter-TSF user data integrity transfer protection (FDP_UIT)**10.13.1 Family Behaviour**

This family defines the requirements for providing integrity for user data in transit between the TOE and another trusted IT product and recovering from detectable errors. At a minimum, this family monitors the integrity of user data for modifications. Furthermore, this family supports different ways of correcting detected integrity errors.

10.13.2 Component levelling

FDP_UIT.1 Data exchange integrity addresses detection of modifications, deletions, insertions, and replay errors of the user data transmitted.

FDP_UIT.2 Source data exchange recovery addresses recovery of the original user data by the receiving TSF with help from the source trusted IT product.

FDP_UIT.3 Destination data exchange recovery addresses recovery of the original user data by the receiving TSF on its own without any help from the source trusted IT product.

10.13.3 Management of FDP_UIT.1, FDP_UIT.2, FDP_UIT.3

There are no management activities foreseen.

10.13.4 Audit of FDP_UIT.1

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: The identity of any user or subject using the data exchange mechanisms.
- b) Basic: The identity of any user or subject attempting to use the user data exchange mechanisms, but who is unauthorised to do so.
- c) Basic: A reference to the names or other indexing information useful in identifying the user data that was transmitted or received. This could include security attributes associated with the user data.
- d) Basic: Any identified attempts to block transmission of user data.
- e) Detailed: The types and/or effects of any detected modifications of transmitted user data.

10.13.5 Audit of FDP_UIT.2, FDP_UIT.3

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: The identity of any user or subject using the data exchange mechanisms.
- b) Minimal: Successful recovery from errors including they type of error that was detected.
- c) Basic: The identity of any user or subject attempting to use the user data exchange mechanisms, but who is unauthorised to do so.

- d) Basic: A reference to the names or other indexing information useful in identifying the user data that was transmitted or received. This could include security attributes associated with the user data.
- e) Basic: Any identified attempts to block transmission of user data.
- f) Detailed: The types and/or effects of any detected modifications of transmitted user data.

10.13.6 FDP_UIT.1 Data exchange integrity

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: [FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control, or
FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control]
[FTP_ITC.1 Inter-TSF trusted channel, or
FTP_TRP.1 Trusted path]

10.13.6.1 FDP_UIT.1.1

The TSF shall enforce the [assignment: *access control SFP(s) and/or information flow control SFP(s)*] to be able to [selection: *transmit, receive*] user data in a manner protected from [selection: *modification, deletion, insertion, replay*] errors.

10.13.6.2 FDP_UIT.1.2

The TSF shall be able to determine on receipt of user data, whether [selection: *modification, deletion, insertion, replay*] has occurred.

10.13.7 FDP_UIT.2 Source data exchange recovery

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: [FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control, or
FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control]
[FDP_UIT.1 Data exchange integrity, or
FTP_ITC.1 Inter-TSF trusted channel]

10.13.7.1 FDP_UIT.2.1

The TSF shall enforce the [assignment: *access control SFP(s) and/or information flow control SFP(s)*] to be able to recover from [assignment: *list of recoverable errors*] with the help of the source trusted IT product.

10.13.8 FDP_UIT.3 Destination data exchange recovery

Hierarchical to: FDP_UIT.2 Source data exchange recovery

Dependencies: [FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control, or
FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control]
[FDP_UIT.1 Data exchange integrity, or
FTP_ITC.1 Inter-TSF trusted channel]

10.13.8.1 FDP_UIT.3.1

The TSF shall enforce the [assignment: *access control SFP(s) and/or information flow control SFP(s)*] to be able to recover from [assignment: *list of recoverable errors*] **without any help from** the source trusted IT product.

11 Class FIA: Identification and authentication

Families in this class address the requirements for functions to establish and verify a claimed user identity.

Identification and Authentication is required to ensure that users are associated with the proper security attributes (e.g. identity, groups, roles, security or integrity levels).

The unambiguous identification of authorised users and the correct association of security attributes with users and subjects is critical to the enforcement of the intended security policies. The families in this class deal with determining and verifying the identity of users, determining their authority to interact with the TOE, and with the correct association of security attributes for each authorised user. Other classes of requirements (e.g. User Data Protection, Security Audit) are dependent upon correct identification and authentication of users in order to be effective.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of ISO/IEC 15408-2:2008

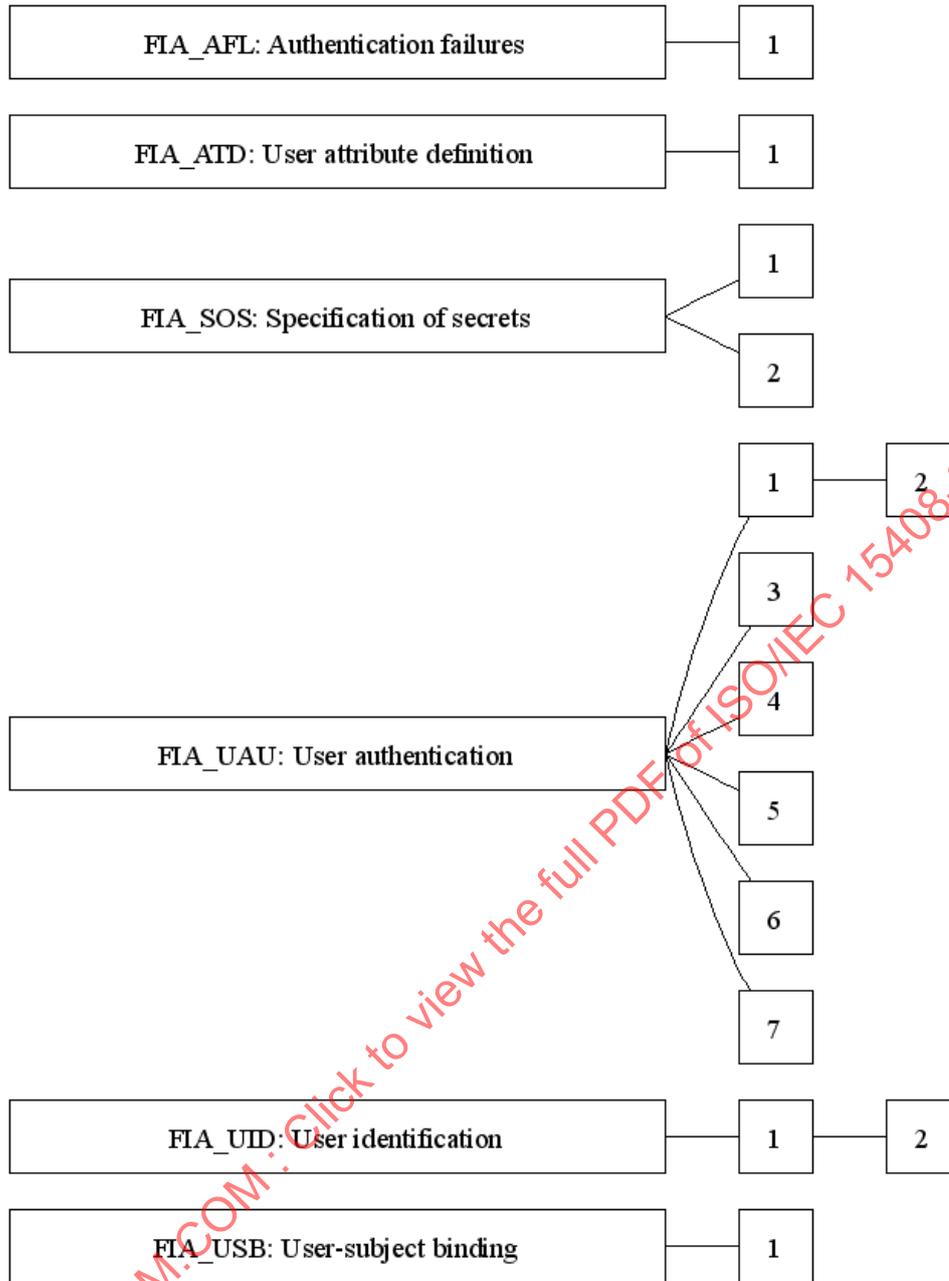


Figure 11 - FIA: Identification and authentication class decomposition

11.1 Authentication failures (FIA_AFL)

11.1.1 Family Behaviour

This family contains requirements for defining values for some number of unsuccessful authentication attempts and TSF actions in cases of authentication attempt failures. Parameters include, but are not limited to, the number of failed authentication attempts and time thresholds.

11.1.2 Component levelling

FIA_AFL.1 Authentication failure handling, requires that the TSF be able to terminate the session establishment process after a specified number of unsuccessful user authentication attempts. It also requires that, after termination of the session establishment process, the TSF be able to disable the user account or the point of entry (e.g. workstation) from which the attempts were made until an administrator-defined condition occurs.

11.1.3 Management of FIA_AFL.1

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) management of the threshold for unsuccessful authentication attempts;
- b) management of actions to be taken in the event of an authentication failure.

11.1.4 Audit of FIA_AFL.1

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: the reaching of the threshold for the unsuccessful authentication attempts and the actions (e.g. disabling of a terminal) taken and the subsequent, if appropriate, restoration to the normal state (e.g. re-enabling of a terminal).

11.1.5 FIA_AFL.1 Authentication failure handling

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FIA_UAU.1 Timing of authentication

11.1.5.1 FIA_AFL.1.1

The TSF shall detect when [selection: *[assignment: positive integer number]*, an administrator configurable positive integer within *[assignment: range of acceptable values]*] unsuccessful authentication attempts occur related to *[assignment: list of authentication events]*.

11.1.5.2 FIA_AFL.1.2

When the defined number of unsuccessful authentication attempts has been [selection: *met, surpassed*], the TSF shall *[assignment: list of actions]*.

11.2 User attribute definition (FIA_ATD)

11.2.1 Family Behaviour

All authorised users may have a set of security attributes, other than the user's identity, that is used to enforce the SFRs. This family defines the requirements for associating user security attributes with users as needed to support the TSF in making security decisions.

11.2.2 Component levelling

FIA_ATD.1 User attribute definition, allows user security attributes for each user to be maintained individually.

11.2.3 Management of FIA_ATD.1

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) if so indicated in the assignment, the authorised administrator might be able to define additional security attributes for users.

11.2.4 Audit of FIA_ATD.1

There are no auditable events foreseen.

11.2.5 FIA_ATD.1 User attribute definition

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

11.2.5.1 FIA_ATD.1.1

The TSF shall maintain the following list of security attributes belonging to individual users: [assignment: *list of security attributes*].

11.3 Specification of secrets (FIA_SOS)

11.3.1 Family Behaviour

This family defines requirements for mechanisms that enforce defined quality metrics on provided secrets and generate secrets to satisfy the defined metric.

11.3.2 Component levelling

FIA_SOS.1 Verification of secrets, requires the TSF to verify that secrets meet defined quality metrics.

FIA_SOS.2 TSF Generation of secrets, requires the TSF to be able to generate secrets that meet defined quality metrics.

11.3.3 Management of FIA_SOS.1

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) the management of the metric used to verify the secrets.

11.3.4 Management of FIA_SOS.2

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) the management of the metric used to generate the secrets.

11.3.5 Audit of FIA_SOS.1, FIA_SOS.2

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: Rejection by the TSF of any tested secret;
- b) Basic: Rejection or acceptance by the TSF of any tested secret;
- c) Detailed: Identification of any changes to the defined quality metrics.

11.3.6 FIA_SOS.1 Verification of secrets

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

11.3.6.1 FIA_SOS.1.1

The TSF shall provide a mechanism to verify that secrets meet [assignment: *a defined quality metric*].

11.3.7 FIA_SOS.2 TSF Generation of secrets

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

11.3.7.1 FIA_SOS.2.1

The TSF shall provide a mechanism to generate secrets that meet [assignment: *a defined quality metric*].

11.3.7.2 FIA_SOS.2.2

The TSF shall be able to enforce the use of TSF generated secrets for [assignment: *list of TSF functions*].

11.4 User authentication (FIA_UAU)**11.4.1 Family Behaviour**

This family defines the types of user authentication mechanisms supported by the TSF. This family also defines the required attributes on which the user authentication mechanisms must be based.

11.4.2 Component levelling

FIA_UAU.1 Timing of authentication, allows a user to perform certain actions prior to the authentication of the user's identity.

FIA_UAU.2 User authentication before any action, requires that users are authenticated before any other action will be allowed by the TSF.

FIA_UAU.3 Unforgeable authentication Unforgeable authentication, requires the authentication mechanism to be able to detect and prevent the use of authentication data that has been forged or copied.

FIA_UAU.4 Single-use authentication mechanisms, requires an authentication mechanism that operates with single-use authentication data.

FIA_UAU.5 Multiple authentication mechanisms, requires that different authentication mechanisms be provided and used to authenticate user identities for specific events.

FIA_UAU.6 Re-authenticating, requires the ability to specify events for which the user needs to be re-authenticated.

FIA_UAU.7 Protected authentication feedback, requires that only limited feedback information is provided to the user during the authentication.

11.4.3 Management of FIA_UAU.1

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) management of the authentication data by an administrator;
- b) management of the authentication data by the associated user;
- c) managing the list of actions that can be taken before the user is authenticated.

11.4.4 Management of FIA_UAU.2

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) management of the authentication data by an administrator;
- b) management of the authentication data by the user associated with this data.

11.4.5 Management of FIA_UAU.3, FIA_UAU.4, FIA_UAU.7

There are no management activities foreseen.

11.4.6 Management of FIA_UAU.5

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) the management of authentication mechanisms;
- b) the management of the rules for authentication.

11.4.7 Management of FIA_UAU.6

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) if an authorised administrator could request re-authentication, the management includes a re-authentication request.

11.4.8 Audit of FIA_UAU.1

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: Unsuccessful use of the authentication mechanism;
- b) Basic: All use of the authentication mechanism;
- c) Detailed: All TSF mediated actions performed before authentication of the user.

11.4.9 Audit of FIA_UAU.2

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: Unsuccessful use of the authentication mechanism;
- b) Basic: All use of the authentication mechanism.

11.4.10 Audit of FIA_UAU.3

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: Detection of fraudulent authentication data;
- b) Basic: All immediate measures taken and results of checks on the fraudulent data.

11.4.11 Audit of FIA_UAU.4

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: Attempts to reuse authentication data.

11.4.12 Audit of FIA_UAU.5

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: The final decision on authentication;
- b) Basic: The result of each activated mechanism together with the final decision.

11.4.13 Audit of FIA_UAU.6

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: Failure of reauthentication;
- b) Basic: All reauthentication attempts.

11.4.14 Audit of FIA_UAU.7

There are no auditable events foreseen.

11.4.15 FIA_UAU.1 Timing of authentication

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FIA_UID.1 Timing of identification

11.4.15.1 FIA_UAU.1.1

The TSF shall allow [assignment: *list of TSF mediated actions*] on behalf of the user to be performed before the user is authenticated.

11.4.15.2 FIA_UAU.1.2

The TSF shall require each user to be successfully authenticated before allowing any other TSF-mediated actions on behalf of that user.

11.4.16 FIA_UAU.2 User authentication before any action

Hierarchical to: FIA_UAU.1 Timing of authentication

Dependencies: FIA_UID.1 Timing of identification

11.4.16.1 FIA_UAU.2.1

The TSF shall require each user to be successfully authenticated before allowing any other TSF-mediated actions on behalf of that user.

11.4.17 FIA_UAU.3 Unforgeable authentication

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

11.4.17.1 FIA_UAU.3.1

The TSF shall [selection: *detect, prevent*] use of authentication data that has been forged by any user of the TSF.

11.4.17.2 FIA_UAU.3.2

The TSF shall [selection: *detect, prevent*] use of authentication data that has been copied from any other user of the TSF.

11.4.18 FIA_UAU.4 Single-use authentication mechanisms

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

11.4.18.1 FIA_UAU.4.1

The TSF shall prevent reuse of authentication data related to [assignment: *identified authentication mechanism(s)*].

11.4.19 FIA_UAU.5 Multiple authentication mechanisms

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

11.4.19.1 FIA_UAU.5.1

The TSF shall provide [assignment: *list of multiple authentication mechanisms*] to support user authentication.

11.4.19.2 FIA_UAU.5.2

The TSF shall authenticate any user's claimed identity according to the [assignment: *rules describing how the multiple authentication mechanisms provide authentication*].

11.4.20 FIA_UAU.6 Re-authenticating

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

11.4.20.1 FIA_UAU.6.1

The TSF shall re-authenticate the user under the conditions [assignment: *list of conditions under which re-authentication is required*].

11.4.21 FIA_UAU.7 Protected authentication feedback

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FIA_UAU.1 Timing of authentication

11.4.21.1 FIA_UAU.7.1

The TSF shall provide only [assignment: *list of feedback*] to the user while the authentication is in progress.

11.5 User identification (FIA_UID)

11.5.1 Family Behaviour

This family defines the conditions under which users shall be required to identify themselves before performing any other actions that are to be mediated by the TSF and which require user identification.

11.5.2 Component levelling

FIA_UID.1 Timing of identification, allows users to perform certain actions before being identified by the TSF.

FIA_UID.2 User identification before any action, requires that users identify themselves before any other action will be allowed by the TSF.

11.5.3 Management of FIA_UID.1

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) the management of the user identities;
- b) if an authorised administrator can change the actions allowed before identification, the managing of the action lists.

11.5.4 Management of FIA_UID.2

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) the management of the user identities.

11.5.5 Audit of FIA_UID.1, FIA_UID.2

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: Unsuccessful use of the user identification mechanism, including the user identity provided;
- b) Basic: All use of the user identification mechanism, including the user identity provided.

11.5.6 FIA_UID.1 Timing of identification

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

11.5.6.1 FIA_UID.1.1

The TSF shall allow [assignment: *list of TSF-mediated actions*] on behalf of the user to be performed before the user is identified.

11.5.6.2 FIA_UID.1.2

The TSF shall require each user to be successfully identified before allowing any other TSF-mediated actions on behalf of that user.

11.5.7 FIA_UID.2 User identification before any action

Hierarchical to: FIA_UID.1 Timing of identification

Dependencies: No dependencies.

11.5.7.1 FIA_UID.2.1

The TSF shall require each user to be successfully identified before allowing any other TSF-mediated actions on behalf of that user.

11.6 User-subject binding (FIA_USB)

11.6.1 Family Behaviour

An authenticated user, in order to use the TOE, typically activates a subject. The user's security attributes are associated (totally or partially) with this subject. This family defines requirements to create and maintain the association of the user's security attributes to a subject acting on the user's behalf.

11.6.2 Component levelling

FIA_USB.1 User-subject binding, requires the specification of any rules governing the association between user attributes and the subject attributes into which they are mapped.

11.6.3 Management of FIA_USB.1

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) an authorised administrator can define default subject security attributes.
- b) an authorised administrator can change subject security attributes.

11.6.4 Audit of FIA_USB.1

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: Unsuccessful binding of user security attributes to a subject (e.g. creation of a subject).
- b) Basic: Success and failure of binding of user security attributes to a subject (e.g. success or failure to create a subject).

11.6.5 FIA_USB.1 User-subject binding

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FIA_ATD.1 User attribute definition

11.6.5.1 FIA_USB.1.1

The TSF shall associate the following user security attributes with subjects acting on the behalf of that user: [assignment: *list of user security attributes*].

11.6.5.2 FIA_USB.1.2

The TSF shall enforce the following rules on the initial association of user security attributes with subjects acting on the behalf of users: [assignment: *rules for the initial association of attributes*].

11.6.5.3 FIA_USB.1.3

The TSF shall enforce the following rules governing changes to the user security attributes associated with subjects acting on the behalf of users: [assignment: *rules for the changing of attributes*].

12 Class FMT: Security management

This class is intended to specify the management of several aspects of the TSF: security attributes, TSF data and functions. The different management roles and their interaction, such as separation of capability, can be specified.

This class has several objectives:

- a) management of TSF data, which include, for example, banners;
- b) management of security attributes, which include, for example, the Access Control Lists, and Capability Lists;
- c) management of functions of the TSF, which includes, for example, the selection of functions, and rules or conditions influencing the behaviour of the TSF;
- d) definition of security roles.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of ISO/IEC 15408-2:2008

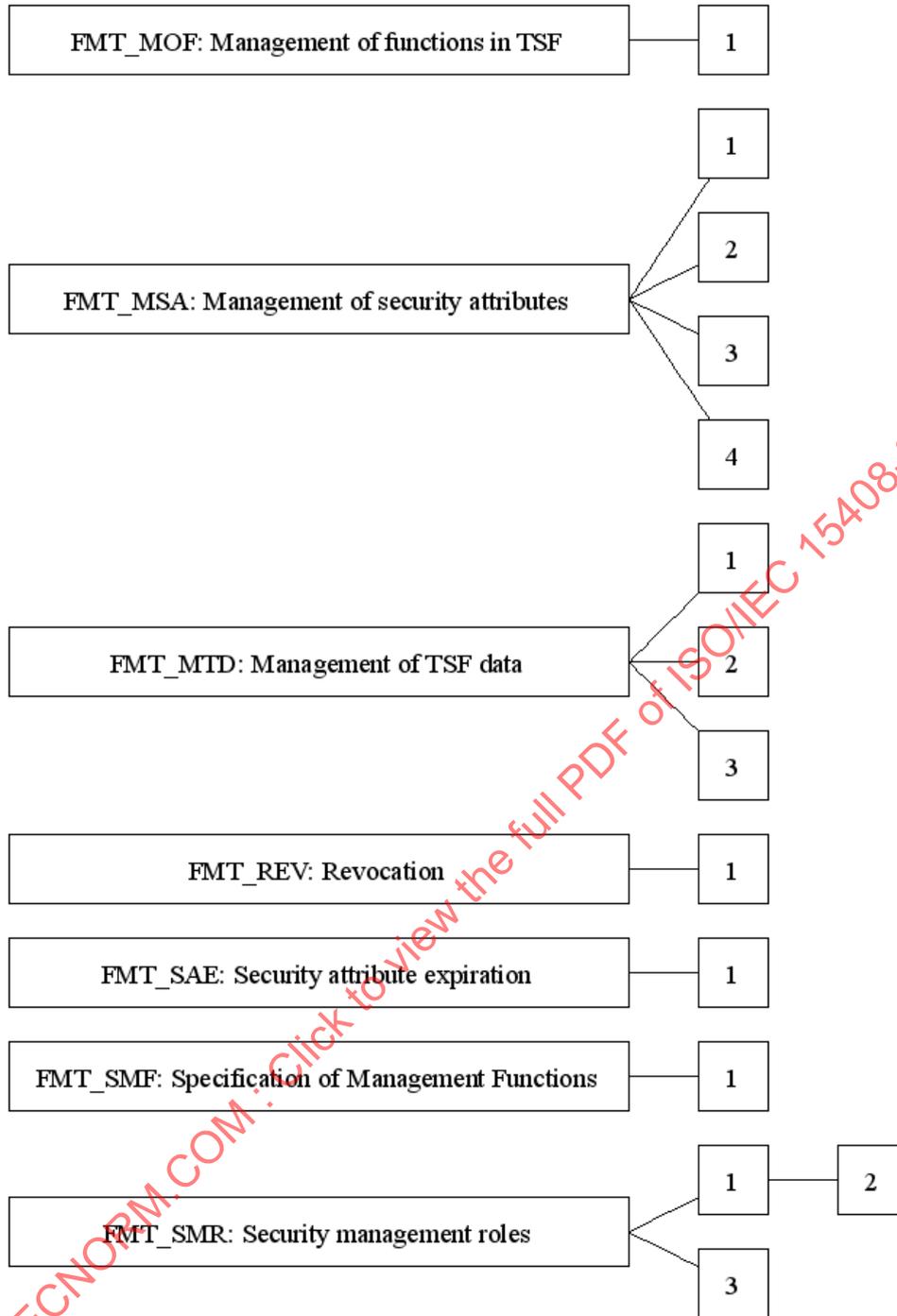


Figure 12 - FMT: Security management class decomposition

12.1 Management of functions in TSF (FMT_MOF)

12.1.1 Family Behaviour

This family allows authorised users control over the management of functions in the TSF. Examples of functions in the TSF include the audit functions and the multiple authentication functions.

12.1.2 Component levelling

FMT_MOF.1 Management of security functions behaviour allows the authorised users (roles) to manage the behaviour of functions in the TSF that use rules or have specified conditions that may be manageable.

12.1.3 Management of FMT_MOF.1

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) managing the group of roles that can interact with the functions in the TSF;

12.1.4 Audit of FMT_MOF.1

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Basic: All modifications in the behaviour of the functions in the TSF.

12.1.5 FMT_MOF.1 Management of security functions behaviour

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FMT_SMR.1 Security roles

FMT_SMF.1 Specification of Management Functions

12.1.5.1 FMT_MOF.1.1

The TSF shall restrict the ability to [selection: *determine the behaviour of, disable, enable, modify the behaviour of*] the functions [assignment: *list of functions*] to [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*].

12.2 Management of security attributes (FMT_MSA)

12.2.1 Family Behaviour

This family allows authorised users control over the management of security attributes. This management might include capabilities for viewing and modifying of security attributes.

12.2.2 Component levelling

FMT_MSA.1 Management of security attributes allows authorised users (roles) to manage the specified security attributes.

FMT_MSA.2 Secure security attributes ensures that values assigned to security attributes are valid with respect to the secure state.

FMT_MSA.3 Static attribute initialisation ensures that the default values of security attributes are appropriately either permissive or restrictive in nature.

FMT_MSA.4 Security attribute value inheritance allows the rules/policies to be specified that will dictate the value to be inherited by a security attribute.

12.2.3 Management of FMT_MSA.1

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) managing the group of roles that can interact with the security attributes;
- b) management of rules by which security attributes inherit specified values.

12.2.4 Management of FMT_MSA.2

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) management of rules by which security attributes inherit specified values.

12.2.5 Management of FMT_MSA.3

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) managing the group of roles that can specify initial values;
- b) managing the permissive or restrictive setting of default values for a given access control SFP;
- c) management of rules by which security attributes inherit specified values.

12.2.6 Management of FMT_MSA.4

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) specification of the role permitted to establish or modify security attributes.

12.2.7 Audit of FMT_MSA.1

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Basic: All modifications of the values of security attributes.

12.2.8 Audit of FMT_MSA.2

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: All offered and rejected values for a security attribute.
- b) Detailed: All offered and accepted secure values for a security attribute.

12.2.9 Audit of FMT_MSA.3

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Basic: Modifications of the default setting of permissive or restrictive rules.
- b) Basic: All modifications of the initial values of security attributes.

12.2.10 Audit of FMT_MSA.4

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Basic: Modifications of security attributes, possibly with the old and/or values of security attributes that were modified.

12.2.11 FMT_MSA.1 Management of security attributes

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: [FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control, or
FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control]

FMT_SMR.1 Security roles

FMT_SMF.1 Specification of Management Functions

12.2.11.1 FMT_MSA.1.1

The TSF shall enforce the [assignment: *access control SFP(s), information flow control SFP(s)*] to restrict the ability to [selection: *change_default, query, modify, delete, [assignment: other operations]*] the security attributes [assignment: *list of security attributes*] to [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*].

12.2.12 FMT_MSA.2 Secure security attributes

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: [FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control, or

FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control]

FMT_MSA.1 Management of security attributes

FMT_SMR.1 Security roles

12.2.12.1 FMT_MSA.2.1

The TSF shall ensure that only secure values are accepted for [assignment: *list of security attributes*].

12.2.13 FMT_MSA.3 Static attribute initialisation

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FMT_MSA.1 Management of security attributes

FMT_SMR.1 Security roles

12.2.13.1 FMT_MSA.3.1

The TSF shall enforce the [assignment: *access control SFP, information flow control SFP*] to provide [selection, choose one of: *restrictive, permissive, [assignment: other property]*] default values for security attributes that are used to enforce the SFP.

12.2.13.2 FMT_MSA.3.2

The TSF shall allow the [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*] to specify alternative initial values to override the default values when an object or information is created.

12.2.14 FMT_MSA.4 Security attribute value inheritance

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: [FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control, or

FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control]

12.2.14.1 FMT_MSA.4.1

The TSF shall use the following rules to set the value of security attributes: [assignment: *rules for setting the values of security attributes*]

12.3 Management of TSF data (FMT_MTD)

12.3.1 Family Behaviour

This family allows authorised users (roles) control over the management of TSF data. Examples of TSF data include audit information, clock and other TSF configuration parameters.

12.3.2 Component levelling

FMT_MTD.1 Management of TSF data allows authorised users to manage TSF data.

FMT_MTD.2 Management of limits on TSF data specifies the action to be taken if limits on TSF data are reached or exceeded.

FMT_MTD.3 Secure TSF data ensures that values assigned to TSF data are valid with respect to the secure state.

12.3.3 Management of FMT_MTD.1

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) managing the group of roles that can interact with the TSF data.

12.3.4 Management of FMT_MTD.2

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) managing the group of roles that can interact with the limits on the TSF data.

12.3.5 Management of FMT_MTD.3

There are no management activities foreseen.

12.3.6 Audit of FMT_MTD.1

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Basic: All modifications to the values of TSF data.

12.3.7 Audit of FMT_MTD.2

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Basic: All modifications to the limits on TSF data.
- b) Basic: All modifications in the actions to be taken in case of violation of the limits.

12.3.8 Audit of FMT_MTD.3

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: All rejected values of TSF data.

12.3.9 FMT_MTD.1 Management of TSF data

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FMT_SMR.1 Security roles
 FMT_SMF.1 Specification of Management Functions

12.3.9.1 FMT_MTD.1.1

The TSF shall restrict the ability to [selection: *change_default, query, modify, delete, clear, [assignment: other operations]*] the [assignment: *list of TSF data*] to [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*].

12.3.10 FMT_MTD.2 Management of limits on TSF data

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FMT_MTD.1 Management of TSF data
 FMT_SMR.1 Security roles

12.3.10.1 FMT_MTD.2.1

The TSF shall restrict the specification of the limits for [assignment: *list of TSF data*] to [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*].

12.3.10.2 FMT_MTD.2.2

The TSF shall take the following actions, if the TSF data are at, or exceed, the indicated limits: [assignment: *actions to be taken*].

12.3.11 FMT_MTD.3 Secure TSF data

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FMT_MTD.1 Management of TSF data

12.3.11.1 FMT_MTD.3.1

The TSF shall ensure that only secure values are accepted for [assignment: *list of TSF data*].

12.4 Revocation (FMT_REV)

12.4.1 Family Behaviour

This family addresses revocation of security attributes for a variety of entities within a TOE.

12.4.2 Component levelling

FMT_REV.1 Revocation provides for revocation of security attributes to be enforced at some point in time.

12.4.3 Management of FMT_REV.1

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) managing the group of roles that can invoke revocation of security attributes;
- b) managing the lists of users, subjects, objects and other resources for which revocation is possible;
- c) managing the revocation rules.

12.4.4 Audit of FMT_REV.1

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: Unsuccessful revocation of security attributes.
- b) Basic: All attempts to revoke security attributes.

12.4.5 FMT_REV.1 Revocation

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FMT_SMR.1 Security roles

12.4.5.1 FMT_REV.1.1

The TSF shall restrict the ability to revoke [assignment: *list of security attributes*] associated with the [selection: *users, subjects, objects, [assignment: other additional resources]*] under the control of the TSF to [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*].

12.4.5.2 FMT_REV.1.2

The TSF shall enforce the rules [assignment: *specification of revocation rules*].

12.5 Security attribute expiration (FMT_SAE)

12.5.1 Family Behaviour

This family addresses the capability to enforce time limits for the validity of security attributes.

12.5.2 Component levelling

FMT_SAE.1 Time-limited authorisation provides the capability for an authorised user to specify an expiration time on specified security attributes.

12.5.3 Management of FMT_SAE.1

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) managing the list of security attributes for which expiration is to be supported;
- b) the actions to be taken if the expiration time has passed.

12.5.4 Audit of FMT_SAE.1

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Basic: Specification of the expiration time for an attribute;
- b) Basic: Action taken due to attribute expiration.

12.5.5 FMT_SAE.1 Time-limited authorisation

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FMT_SMR.1 Security roles

FPT_STM.1 Reliable time stamps

12.5.5.1 FMT_SAE.1.1

The TSF shall restrict the capability to specify an expiration time for [assignment: *list of security attributes for which expiration is to be supported*] to [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*].

12.5.5.2 FMT_SAE.1.2

For each of these security attributes, the TSF shall be able to [assignment: *list of actions to be taken for each security attribute*] after the expiration time for the indicated security attribute has passed.

12.6 Specification of Management Functions (FMT_SMF)

12.6.1 Family Behaviour

This family allows the specification of the management functions to be provided by the TOE. Management functions provide TSFI that allow administrators to define the parameters that control the operation of security-related aspects of the TOE, such as data protection attributes, TOE protection attributes, audit attributes, and identification and authentication attributes. Management functions also include those functions performed by an operator to ensure continued operation of the TOE, such as backup and recovery. This family works in conjunction with the other components in the FMT: Security management class: the component in this family calls out the management functions, and other families in FMT: Security management restrict the ability to use these management functions.

12.6.2 Component levelling

FMT_SMF.1 Specification of Management Functions requires that the TSF provide specific management functions.

12.6.3 Management of FMT_SMF.1

There are no management activities foreseen.

12.6.4 Audit of FMT_SMF.1

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: Use of the management functions.

12.6.5 FMT_SMF.1 Specification of Management Functions

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

12.6.5.1 FMT_SMF.1.1

The TSF shall be capable of performing the following management functions: [assignment: *list of management functions to be provided by the TSF*].

12.7 Security management roles (FMT_SMR)

12.7.1 Family Behaviour

This family is intended to control the assignment of different roles to users. The capabilities of these roles with respect to security management are described in the other families in this class.

12.7.2 Component levelling

FMT_SMR.1 Security roles specifies the roles with respect to security that the TSF recognises.

FMT_SMR.2 Restrictions on security roles specifies that in addition to the specification of the roles, there are rules that control the relationship between the roles.

FMT_SMR.3 Assuming roles, requires that an explicit request is given to the TSF to assume a role.

12.7.3 Management of FMT_SMR.1

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) managing the group of users that are part of a role.

12.7.4 Management of FMT_SMR.2

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) managing the group of users that are part of a role;
- b) managing the conditions that the roles must satisfy.

12.7.5 Management of FMT_SMR.3

There are no management activities foreseen.

12.7.6 Audit of FMT_SMR.1

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: modifications to the group of users that are part of a role.
- b) Detailed: every use of the rights of a role.

12.7.7 Audit of FMT_SMR.2

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: modifications to the group of users that are part of a role.
- b) Minimal: unsuccessful attempts to use a role due to the given conditions on the roles.
- c) Detailed: every use of the rights of a role.

12.7.8 Audit of FMT_SMR.3

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: explicit request to assume a role.

12.7.9 FMT_SMR.1 Security roles

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FIA_UID.1 Timing of identification

12.7.9.1 FMT_SMR.1.1

The TSF shall maintain the roles [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*].

12.7.9.2 FMT_SMR.1.2

The TSF shall be able to associate users with roles.

12.7.10 FMT_SMR.2 Restrictions on security roles

Hierarchical to: FMT_SMR.1 Security roles

Dependencies: FIA_UID.1 Timing of identification

12.7.10.1 FMT_SMR.2.1

The TSF shall maintain the roles: [assignment: *authorised identified roles*].

12.7.10.2 FMT_SMR.2.2

The TSF shall be able to associate users with roles.

12.7.10.3 FMT_SMR.2.3

The TSF shall ensure that the conditions [assignment: *conditions for the different roles*] are satisfied.

12.7.11 FMT_SMR.3 Assuming roles

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FMT_SMR.1 Security roles

12.7.11.1 FMT_SMR.3.1

The TSF shall require an explicit request to assume the following roles: [assignment: *the roles*].

13 Class FPR: Privacy

This class contains privacy requirements. These requirements provide a user protection against discovery and misuse of identity by other users.

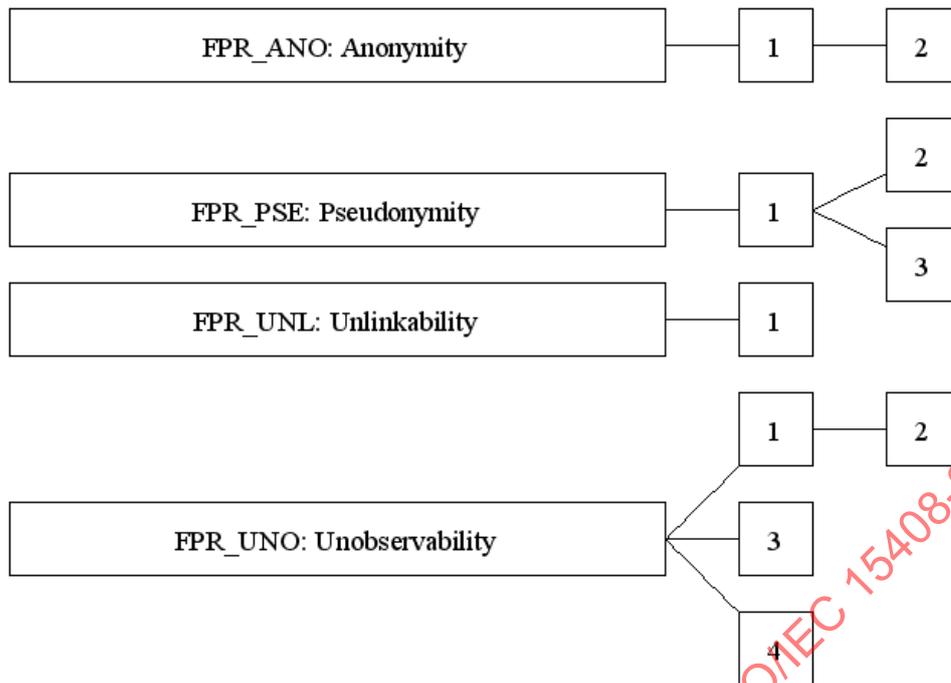


Figure 13 - FPR: Privacy class decomposition

13.1 Anonymity (FPR_ANO)

13.1.1 Family Behaviour

This family ensures that a user may use a resource or service without disclosing the user's identity. The requirements for Anonymity provide protection of the user identity. Anonymity is not intended to protect the subject identity.

13.1.2 Component levelling

FPR_ANO.1 Anonymity, requires that other users or subjects are unable to determine the identity of a user bound to a subject or operation.

FPR_ANO.2 Anonymity without soliciting information enhances the requirements of FPR_ANO.1 Anonymity by ensuring that the TSF does not ask for the user identity.

13.1.3 Management of FPR_ANO.1, FPR_ANO.2

There are no management activities foreseen.

13.1.4 Audit of FPR_ANO.1, FPR_ANO.2

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: The invocation of the anonymity mechanism.

13.1.5 FPR_ANO.1 Anonymity

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

13.1.5.1 FPR_ANO.1.1

The TSF shall ensure that [assignment: *set of users and/or subjects*] are unable to determine the real user name bound to [assignment: *list of subjects and/or operations and/or objects*].

13.1.6 FPR_ANO.2 Anonymity without soliciting information

Hierarchical to: FPR_ANO.1 Anonymity

Dependencies: No dependencies.

13.1.6.1 FPR_ANO.2.1

The TSF shall ensure that [assignment: *set of users and/or subjects*] are unable to determine the real user name bound to [assignment: *list of subjects and/or operations and/or objects*].

13.1.6.2 FPR_ANO.2.2

The TSF shall provide [assignment: *list of services*] to [assignment: *list of subjects*] without soliciting any reference to the real user name.

13.2 Pseudonymity (FPR_PSE)**13.2.1 Family Behaviour**

This family ensures that a user may use a resource or service without disclosing its user identity, but can still be accountable for that use.

13.2.2 Component levelling

FPR_PSE.1 Pseudonymity requires that a set of users and/or subjects are unable to determine the identity of a user bound to a subject or operation, but that this user is still accountable for its actions.

FPR_PSE.2 Reversible pseudonymity, requires the TSF to provide a capability to determine the original user identity based on a provided alias.

FPR_PSE.3 Alias pseudonymity, requires the TSF to follow certain construction rules for the alias to the user identity.

13.2.3 Management of FPR_PSE.1, FPR_PSE.2, FPR_PSE.3

There are no management activities foreseen.

13.2.4 Audit of FPR_PSE.1, FPR_PSE.2, FPR_PSE.3

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: The subject/user that requested resolution of the user identity should be audited.

13.2.5 FPR_PSE.1 Pseudonymity

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

13.2.5.1 FPR_PSE.1.1

The TSF shall ensure that [assignment: *set of users and/or subjects*] are unable to determine the real user name bound to [assignment: *list of subjects and/or operations and/or objects*].

13.2.5.2 FPR_PSE.1.2

The TSF shall be able to provide [assignment: *number of aliases*] aliases of the real user name to [assignment: *list of subjects*].

13.2.5.3 FPR_PSE.1.3

The TSF shall [selection, choose one of: *determine an alias for a user, accept the alias from the user*] and verify that it conforms to the [assignment: *alias metric*].

13.2.6 FPR_PSE.2 Reversible pseudonymity

Hierarchical to: FPR_PSE.1 Pseudonymity

Dependencies: FIA_UID.1 Timing of identification

13.2.6.1 FPR_PSE.2.1

The TSF shall ensure that [assignment: *set of users and/or subjects*] are unable to determine the real user name bound to [assignment: *list of subjects and/or operations and/or objects*].

13.2.6.2 FPR_PSE.2.2

The TSF shall be able to provide [assignment: *number of aliases*] aliases of the real user name to [assignment: *list of subjects*].

13.2.6.3 FPR_PSE.2.3

The TSF shall [selection, choose one of: *determine an alias for a user, accept the alias from the user*] and verify that it conforms to the [assignment: *alias metric*].

13.2.6.4 FPR_PSE.2.4

The TSF shall provide [selection: *an authorised user, list of trusted subjects*] a capability to determine the user identity based on the provided alias only under the following [assignment: *list of conditions*].

13.2.7 FPR_PSE.3 Alias pseudonymity

Hierarchical to: FPR_PSE.1 Pseudonymity

Dependencies: No dependencies.

13.2.7.1 FPR_PSE.3.1

The TSF shall ensure that [assignment: *set of users and/or subjects*] are unable to determine the real user name bound to [assignment: *list of subjects and/or operations and/or objects*].

13.2.7.2 FPR_PSE.3.2

The TSF shall be able to provide [assignment: *number of aliases*] aliases of the real user name to [assignment: *list of subjects*].

13.2.7.3 FPR_PSE.3.3

The TSF shall [selection, choose one of: *determine an alias for a user, accept the alias from the user*] and verify that it conforms to the [assignment: *alias metric*].

13.2.7.4 FPR_PSE.3.4

The TSF shall provide an alias to the real user name which shall be identical to an alias provided previously under the following [assignment: *list of conditions*] otherwise the alias provided shall be unrelated to previously provided aliases.

13.3 Unlinkability (FPR_UNL)**13.3.1 Family Behaviour**

This family ensures that a user may make multiple uses of resources or services without others being able to link these uses together.

13.3.2 Component levelling

FPR_UNL.1 Unlinkability, requires that users and/or subjects are unable to determine whether the same user caused certain specific operations.

13.3.3 Management of FPR_UNL.1

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) the management of the unlinkability function.

13.3.4 Audit of FPR_UNL.1

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: The invocation of the unlinkability mechanism.

13.3.5 FPR_UNL.1 Unlinkability

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

13.3.5.1 FPR_UNL.1.1

The TSF shall ensure that [assignment: *set of users and/or subjects*] are unable to determine whether [assignment: *list of operations*][selection: *were caused by the same user, are related as follows*][assignment: *list of relations*].

13.4 Unobservability (FPR_UNO)**13.4.1 Family Behaviour**

This family ensures that a user may use a resource or service without others, especially third parties, being able to observe that the resource or service is being used.

13.4.2 Component levelling

FPR_UNO.1 Unobservability, requires that users and/or subjects cannot determine whether an operation is being performed.

FPR_UNO.2 Allocation of information impacting unobservability, requires that the TSF provide specific mechanisms to avoid the concentration of privacy related information within the TOE. Such concentrations might impact unobservability if a security compromise occurs.

FPR_UNO.3 Unobservability without soliciting information, requires that the TSF does not try to obtain privacy related information that might be used to compromise unobservability.

FPR_UNO.4 Authorised user observability, requires the TSF to provide one or more authorised users with a capability to observe the usage of resources and/or services.

13.4.3 Management of FPR_UNO.1, FPR_UNO.2

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) the management of the behaviour of the unobservability function.

13.4.4 Management of FPR_UNO.3

There are no management activities foreseen.

13.4.5 Management of FPR_UNO.4

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) the list of authorised users that are capable of determining the occurrence of operations.

13.4.6 Audit of FPR_UNO.1, FPR_UNO.2

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: The invocation of the unobservability mechanism.

13.4.7 Audit of FPR_UNO.3

There are no auditable events foreseen.

13.4.8 Audit of FPR_UNO.4

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: The observation of the use of a resource or service by a user or subject.

13.4.9 FPR_UNO.1 Unobservability

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

13.4.9.1 FPR_UNO.1.1

The TSF shall ensure that [assignment: *list of users and/or subjects*] are unable to observe the operation [assignment: *list of operations*] on [assignment: *list of objects*] by [assignment: *list of protected users and/or subjects*].

13.4.10 FPR_UNO.2 Allocation of information impacting unobservability

Hierarchical to: FPR_UNO.1 Unobservability

Dependencies: No dependencies.

13.4.10.1 FPR_UNO.2.1

The TSF shall ensure that [assignment: *list of users and/or subjects*] are unable to observe the operation [assignment: *list of operations*] on [assignment: *list of objects*] by [assignment: *list of protected users and/or subjects*].

13.4.10.2 FPR_UNO.2.2

The TSF shall allocate the [assignment: *unobservability related information*] among different parts of the TOE such that the following conditions hold during the lifetime of the information: [assignment: *list of conditions*].

13.4.11 FPR_UNO.3 Unobservability without soliciting information

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FPR_UNO.1 Unobservability

13.4.11.1 FPR_UNO.3.1

The TSF shall provide [assignment: *list of services*] to [assignment: *list of subjects*] without soliciting any reference to [assignment: *privacy related information*].

13.4.12 FPR_UNO.4 Authorised user observability

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

13.4.12.1 FPR_UNO.4.1

The TSF shall provide [assignment: *set of authorised users*] with the capability to observe the usage of [assignment: *list of resources and/or services*].

14 Class FPT: Protection of the TSF

This class contains families of functional requirements that relate to the integrity and management of the mechanisms that constitute the TSF and to the integrity of TSF data. In some sense, families in this class may appear to duplicate components in the FDP: User data protection class; they may even be implemented using the same mechanisms. However, FDP: User data protection focuses on user data protection, while FPT: Protection of the TSF focuses on TSF data protection. In fact, components from the FPT: Protection of the TSF class are necessary to provide requirements that the SFPs in the TOE cannot be tampered with or bypassed.

From the point of view of this class, regarding to the TSF there are three significant elements:

- a) The TSF's implementation, which executes and implements the mechanisms that enforce the SFRs.
- b) The TSF's data, which are the administrative databases that guide the enforcement of the SFRs.
- c) The external entities that the TSF may interact with in order to enforce the SFRs.

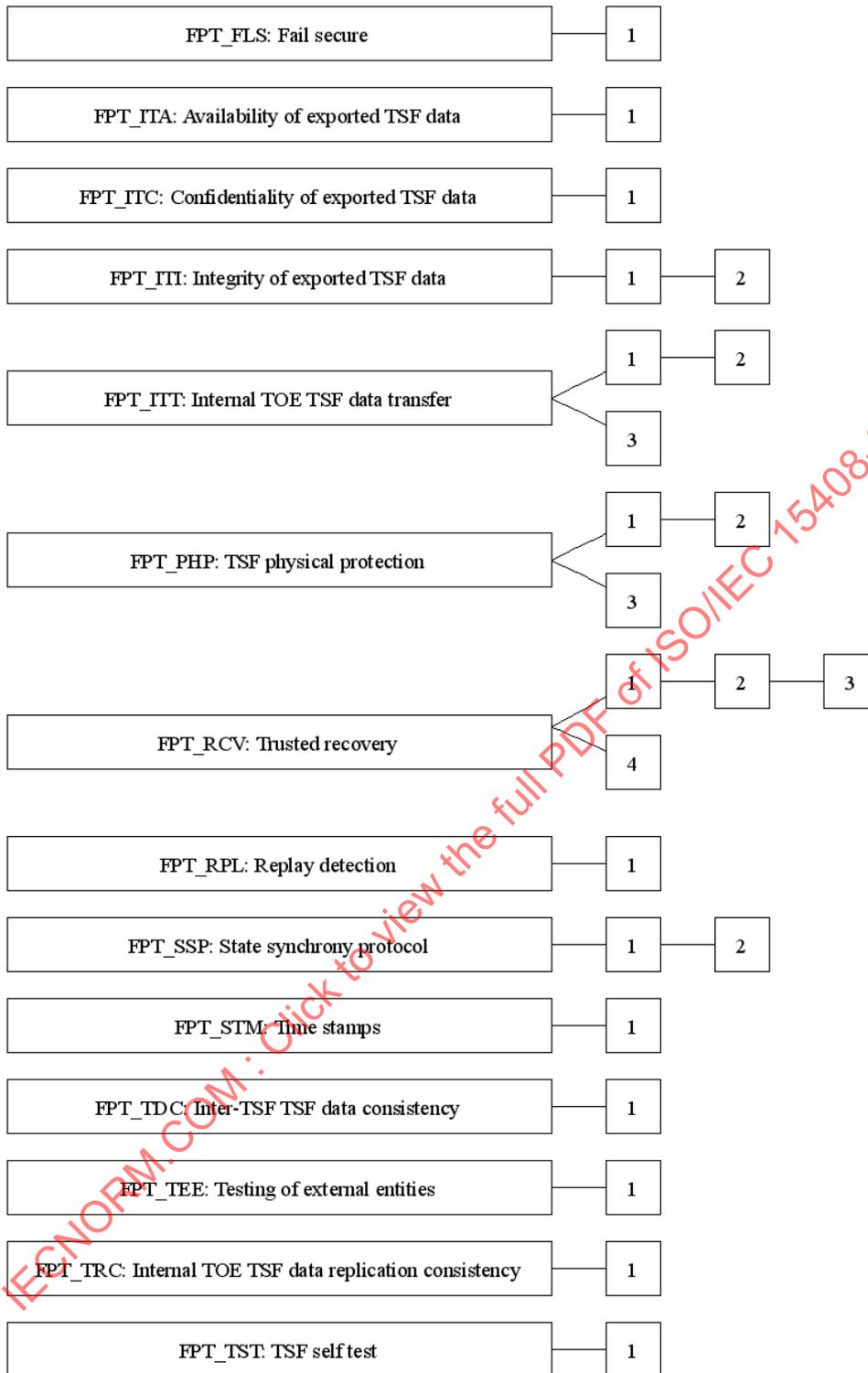


Figure 14 - FPT: Protection of the TSF class decomposition

14.1 Fail secure (FPT_FLS)

14.1.1 Family Behaviour

The requirements of this family ensure that the TOE will always enforce its SFRs in the event of identified categories of failures in the TSF.

14.1.2 Component levelling

This family consists of only one component, FPT_FLS.1 Failure with preservation of secure state, which requires that the TSF preserve a secure state in the face of the identified failures.

14.1.3 Management of FPT_FLS.1

There are no management activities foreseen.

14.1.4 Audit of FPT_FLS.1

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Basic: Failure of the TSF.

14.1.5 FPT_FLS.1 Failure with preservation of secure state

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

14.1.5.1 FPT_FLS.1.1

The TSF shall preserve a secure state when the following types of failures occur: [assignment: *list of types of failures in the TSF*].

14.2 Availability of exported TSF data (FPT_ITA)

14.2.1 Family Behaviour

This family defines the rules for the prevention of loss of availability of TSF data moving between the TSF and another trusted IT product. This data could, for example, be TSF critical data such as passwords, keys, audit data, or TSF executable code.

14.2.2 Component levelling

This family consists of only one component, FPT_ITA.1 Inter-TSF availability within a defined availability metric. This component requires that the TSF ensure, to an identified degree of probability, the availability of TSF data provided to another trusted IT product.

14.2.3 Management of FPT_ITA.1

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) management of the list of types of TSF data that must be available to another trusted IT product.

14.2.4 Audit of FPT_ITA.1

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: the absence of TSF data when required by a TOE.

14.2.5 FPT_ITA.1 Inter-TSF availability within a defined availability metric

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

14.2.5.1 FPT_ITA.1.1

The TSF shall ensure the availability of [assignment: *list of types of TSF data*] provided to another trusted IT product within [assignment: *a defined availability metric*] given the following conditions [assignment: *conditions to ensure availability*].

14.3 Confidentiality of exported TSF data (FPT_ITC)

14.3.1 Family Behaviour

This family defines the rules for the protection from unauthorised disclosure of TSF data during transmission between the TSF and another trusted IT product. This data could, for example, be TSF critical data such as passwords, keys, audit data, or TSF executable code.

14.3.2 Component levelling

This family consists of only one component, FPT_ITC.1 Inter-TSF confidentiality during transmission, which requires that the TSF ensure that data transmitted between the TSF and another trusted IT product is protected from disclosure while in transit.

14.3.3 Management of FPT_ITC.1

There are no management activities foreseen.

14.3.4 Audit of FPT_ITC.1

There are no auditable events foreseen.

14.3.5 FPT_ITC.1 Inter-TSF confidentiality during transmission

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

14.3.5.1 FPT_ITC.1.1

The TSF shall protect all TSF data transmitted from the TSF to another trusted IT product from unauthorised disclosure during transmission.

14.4 Integrity of exported TSF data (FPT_ITI)

14.4.1 Family Behaviour

This family defines the rules for the protection, from unauthorised modification, of TSF data during transmission between the TSF and another trusted IT product. This data could, for example, be TSF critical data such as passwords, keys, audit data, or TSF executable code.

14.4.2 Component levelling

FPT_ITI.1 Inter-TSF detection of modification, provides the ability to detect modification of TSF data during transmission between the TSF and another trusted IT product, under the assumption that another trusted IT product is cognisant of the mechanism used.

FPT_ITI.2 Inter-TSF detection and correction of modification, provides the ability for another trusted IT product not only to detect modification, but to correct modified TSF data under the assumption that another trusted IT product is cognisant of the mechanism used.

14.4.3 Management of FPT_ITI.1

There are no management activities foreseen.

14.4.4 Management of FPT_ITI.2

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) management of the types of TSF data that the TSF should try to correct if modified in transit;
- b) management of the types of action that the TSF could take if TSF data is modified in transit.

14.4.5 Audit of FPT_ITI.1

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: the detection of modification of transmitted TSF data.
- b) Basic: the action taken upon detection of modification of transmitted TSF data.

14.4.6 Audit of FPT_ITI.2

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: the detection of modification of transmitted TSF data.
- b) Basic: the action taken upon detection of modification of transmitted TSF data.
- c) Basic: the use of the correction mechanism.

14.4.7 FPT_ITI.1 Inter-TSF detection of modification

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

14.4.7.1 FPT_ITI.1.1

The TSF shall provide the capability to detect modification of all TSF data during transmission between the TSF and another trusted IT product within the following metric: [assignment: a *defined modification metric*].

14.4.7.2 FPT_ITI.1.2

The TSF shall provide the capability to verify the integrity of all TSF data transmitted between the TSF and another trusted IT product and perform [assignment: *action to be taken*] if modifications are detected.

14.4.8 FPT_ITI.2 Inter-TSF detection and correction of modification

Hierarchical to: FPT_ITI.1 Inter-TSF detection of modification

Dependencies: No dependencies.

14.4.8.1 FPT_ITI.2.1

The TSF shall provide the capability to detect modification of all TSF data during transmission between the TSF and another trusted IT product within the following metric: [assignment: *a defined modification metric*].

14.4.8.2 FPT_ITI.2.2

The TSF shall provide the capability to verify the integrity of all TSF data transmitted between the TSF and another trusted IT product and perform [assignment: *action to be taken*] if modifications are detected.

14.4.8.3 FPT_ITI.2.3

The TSF shall provide the capability to correct [assignment: *type of modification*] of all TSF data transmitted between the TSF and another trusted IT product.

14.5 Internal TOE TSF data transfer (FPT_ITT)

14.5.1 Family Behaviour

This family provides requirements that address protection of TSF data when it is transferred between separate parts of a TOE across an internal channel.

14.5.2 Component levelling

FPT_ITT.1 Basic internal TSF data transfer protection, requires that TSF data be protected when transmitted between separate parts of the TOE.

FPT_ITT.2 TSF data transfer separation, requires that the TSF separate user data from TSF data during transmission.

FPT_ITT.3 TSF data integrity monitoring, requires that the TSF data transmitted between separate parts of the TOE is monitored for identified integrity errors.

14.5.3 Management of FPT_ITT.1

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) management of the types of modification against which the TSF should protect;
- b) management of the mechanism used to provide the protection of the data in transit between different parts of the TSF.

14.5.4 Management of FPT_ITT.2

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) management of the types of modification against which the TSF should protect;
- b) management of the mechanism used to provide the protection of the data in transit between different parts of the TSF;
- c) management of the separation mechanism.

14.5.5 Management of FPT_ITT.3

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) management of the types of modification against which the TSF should protect;

- b) management of the mechanism used to provide the protection of the data in transit between different parts of the TSF;
- c) management of the types of modification of TSF data the TSF should try to detect;
- d) management of the actions that will be taken.

14.5.6 Audit of FPT_ITT.1, FPT_ITT.2

There are no auditable events foreseen.

14.5.7 Audit of FPT_ITT.3

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: the detection of modification of TSF data;
- b) Basic: the action taken following detection of an integrity error.

14.5.8 FPT_ITT.1 Basic internal TSF data transfer protection

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

14.5.8.1 FPT_ITT.1.1

The TSF shall protect TSF data from [selection: *disclosure, modification*] when it is transmitted between separate parts of the TOE.

14.5.9 FPT_ITT.2 TSF data transfer separation

Hierarchical to: FPT_ITT.1 Basic internal TSF data transfer protection

Dependencies: No dependencies.

14.5.9.1 FPT_ITT.2.1

The TSF shall protect TSF data from [selection: *disclosure, modification*] when it is transmitted between separate parts of the TOE.

14.5.9.2 FPT_ITT.2.2

The TSF shall separate user data from TSF data when such data is transmitted between separate parts of the TOE.

14.5.10 FPT_ITT.3 TSF data integrity monitoring

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FPT_ITT.1 Basic internal TSF data transfer protection

14.5.10.1 FPT_ITT.3.1

The TSF shall be able to detect [selection: *modification of data, substitution of data, re-ordering of data, deletion of data, [assignment: other integrity errors]*] for TSF data transmitted between separate parts of the TOE.

14.5.10.2 FPT_ITT.3.2

Upon detection of a data integrity error, the TSF shall take the following actions: [assignment: *specify the action to be taken*].

14.6 TSF physical protection (FPT_PHP)

14.6.1 Family Behaviour

TSF physical protection components refer to restrictions on unauthorised physical access to the TSF, and to the deterrence of, and resistance to, unauthorised physical modification, or substitution of the TSF.

The requirements of components in this family ensure that the TSF is protected from physical tampering and interference. Satisfying the requirements of these components results in the TSF being packaged and used in such a manner that physical tampering is detectable, or resistance to physical tampering is enforced. Without these components, the protection functions of a TSF lose their effectiveness in environments where physical damage cannot be prevented. This family also provides requirements regarding how the TSF shall respond to physical tampering attempts.

14.6.2 Component levelling

FPT_PHP.1 Passive detection of physical attack, provides for features that indicate when a TSF device or TSF element is subject to tampering. However, notification of tampering is not automatic; an authorised user must invoke a security administrative function or perform manual inspection to determine if tampering has occurred.

FPT_PHP.2 Notification of physical attack, provides for automatic notification of tampering for an identified subset of physical penetrations.

FPT_PHP.3 Resistance to physical attack, provides for features that prevent or resist physical tampering with TSF devices and TSF elements.

14.6.3 Management of FPT_PHP.1

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) management of the user or role that determines whether physical tampering has occurred.

14.6.4 Management of FPT_PHP.2

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) management of the user or role that gets informed about intrusions;
- b) management of the list of devices that should inform the indicated user or role about the intrusion.

14.6.5 Management of FPT_PHP.3

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) management of the automatic responses to physical tampering.

14.6.6 Audit of FPT_PHP.1

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: if detection by IT means, detection of intrusion.

14.6.7 Audit of FPT_PHP.2

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: detection of intrusion.

14.6.8 Audit of FPT_PHP.3

There are no auditable events foreseen.

14.6.9 FPT_PHP.1 Passive detection of physical attack

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

14.6.9.1 FPT_PHP.1.1

The TSF shall provide unambiguous detection of physical tampering that might compromise the TSF.

14.6.9.2 FPT_PHP.1.2

The TSF shall provide the capability to determine whether physical tampering with the TSF's devices or TSF's elements has occurred.

14.6.10 FPT_PHP.2 Notification of physical attack

Hierarchical to: FPT_PHP.1 Passive detection of physical attack

Dependencies: FMT_MOF.1 Management of security functions behaviour

14.6.10.1 FPT_PHP.2.1

The TSF shall provide unambiguous detection of physical tampering that might compromise the TSF.

14.6.10.2 FPT_PHP.2.2

The TSF shall provide the capability to determine whether physical tampering with the TSF's devices or TSF's elements has occurred.

14.6.10.3 FPT_PHP.2.3

For [assignment: *list of TSF devices/elements for which active detection is required*], the TSF shall monitor the devices and elements and notify [assignment: *a designated user or role*] when physical tampering with the TSF's devices or TSF's elements has occurred.

14.6.11 FPT_PHP.3 Resistance to physical attack

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

14.6.11.1 FPT_PHP.3.1

The TSF shall resist [assignment: *physical tampering scenarios*] to the [assignment: *list of TSF devices/elements*] by responding automatically such that the SFRs are always enforced.

14.7 Trusted recovery (FPT_RCV)

14.7.1 Family Behaviour

The requirements of this family ensure that the TSF can determine that the TOE is started up without protection compromise and can recover without protection compromise after discontinuity of operations. This family is important because the start-up state of the TSF determines the protection of subsequent states.

14.7.2 Component levelling

FPT_RCV.1 Manual recovery, allows a TOE to only provide mechanisms that involve human intervention to return to a secure state.

FPT_RCV.2 Automated recovery, provides, for at least one type of service discontinuity, recovery to a secure state without human intervention; recovery for other discontinuities may require human intervention.

FPT_RCV.3 Automated recovery without undue loss, also provides for automated recovery, but strengthens the requirements by disallowing undue loss of protected objects.

FPT_RCV.4 Function recovery, provides for recovery at the level of particular functions, ensuring either successful completion or rollback of TSF data to a secure state.

14.7.3 Management of FPT_RCV.1

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) management of who can access the restore capability within the maintenance mode.

14.7.4 Management of FPT_RCV.2, FPT_RCV.3

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) management of who can access the restore capability within the maintenance mode;
- b) management of the list of failures/service discontinuities that will be handled through the automatic procedures.

14.7.5 Management of FPT_RCV.4

There are no management activities foreseen.

14.7.6 Audit of FPT_RCV.1, FPT_RCV.2, FPT_RCV.3

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: the fact that a failure or service discontinuity occurred;
- b) Minimal: resumption of the regular operation;
- c) Basic: type of failure or service discontinuity.

14.7.7 Audit of FPT_RCV.4

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: if possible, the impossibility to return to a secure state after a failure of the TSF;

b) Basic: if possible, the detection of a failure of a function.

14.7.8 FPT_RCV.1 Manual recovery

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: AGD_OPE.1 Operational user guidance

14.7.8.1 FPT_RCV.1.1

After [assignment: *list of failures/service discontinuities*] the TSF shall enter a maintenance mode where the ability to return to a secure state is provided.

14.7.9 FPT_RCV.2 Automated recovery

Hierarchical to: FPT_RCV.1 Manual recovery

Dependencies: AGD_OPE.1 Operational user guidance

14.7.9.1 FPT_RCV.2.1

When automated recovery from [assignment: *list of failures/service discontinuities*] is not possible, the TSF shall enter a maintenance mode where the ability to return to a secure state is provided.

14.7.9.2 FPT_RCV.2.2

For [assignment: *list of failures/service discontinuities*], the TSF shall ensure the return of the TOE to a secure state using automated procedures.

14.7.10 FPT_RCV.3 Automated recovery without undue loss

Hierarchical to: FPT_RCV.2 Automated recovery

Dependencies: AGD_OPE.1 Operational user guidance

14.7.10.1 FPT_RCV.3.1

When automated recovery from [assignment: *list of failures/service discontinuities*] is not possible, the TSF shall enter a maintenance mode where the ability to return to a secure state is provided.

14.7.10.2 FPT_RCV.3.2

For [assignment: *list of failures/service discontinuities*], the TSF shall ensure the return of the TOE to a secure state using automated procedures.

14.7.10.3 FPT_RCV.3.3

The functions provided by the TSF to recover from failure or service discontinuity shall ensure that the secure initial state is restored without exceeding [assignment: *quantification*] for loss of TSF data or objects under the control of the TSF.

14.7.10.4 FPT_RCV.3.4

The TSF shall provide the capability to determine the objects that were or were not capable of being recovered.

14.7.11 FPT_RCV.4 Function recovery

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

14.7.11.1 FPT_RCV.4.1

The TSF shall ensure that [assignment: *list of functions and failure scenarios*] have the property that the function either completes successfully, or for the indicated failure scenarios, recovers to a consistent and secure state.

14.8 Replay detection (FPT_RPL)

14.8.1 Family Behaviour

This family addresses detection of replay for various types of entities (e.g. messages, service requests, service responses) and subsequent actions to correct. In the case where replay may be detected, this effectively prevents it.

14.8.2 Component levelling

The family consists of only one component, FPT_RPL.1 Replay detection, which requires that the TSF shall be able to detect the replay of identified entities.

14.8.3 Management of FPT_RPL.1

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) management of the list of identified entities for which replay shall be detected;
- b) management of the list of actions that need to be taken in case of replay.

14.8.4 Audit of FPT_RPL.1

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Basic: Detected replay attacks.
- b) Detailed: Action to be taken based on the specific actions.

14.8.5 FPT_RPL.1 Replay detection

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

14.8.5.1 FPT_RPL.1.1

The TSF shall detect replay for the following entities: [assignment: *list of identified entities*].

14.8.5.2 FPT_RPL.1.2

The TSF shall perform [assignment: *list of specific actions*] when replay is detected.

14.9 State synchrony protocol (FPT_SSP)

14.9.1 Family Behaviour

Distributed TOEs may give rise to greater complexity than monolithic TOEs through the potential for differences in state between parts of the TOE, and through delays in communication. In most cases synchronisation of state between distributed functions involves an exchange protocol, not a simple action.

When malice exists in the distributed environment of these protocols, more complex defensive protocols are required.

State synchrony protocol (FPT_SSP) establishes the requirement for certain critical functions of the TSF to use this trusted protocol. State synchrony protocol (FPT_SSP) ensures that two distributed parts of the TOE (e.g. hosts) have synchronised their states after a security-relevant action.

14.9.2 Component levelling

FPT_SSP.1 Simple trusted acknowledgement, requires only a simple acknowledgment by the data recipient.

FPT_SSP.2 Mutual trusted acknowledgement, requires mutual acknowledgment of the data exchange.

14.9.3 Management of FPT_SSP.1, FPT_SSP.2

There are no management activities foreseen.

14.9.4 Audit of FPT_SSP.1, FPT_SSP.2

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: failure to receive an acknowledgement when expected.

14.9.5 FPT_SSP.1 Simple trusted acknowledgement

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FPT_ITT.1 Basic internal TSF data transfer protection

14.9.5.1 FPT_SSP.1.1

The TSF shall acknowledge, when requested by another part of the TSF, the receipt of an unmodified TSF data transmission.

14.9.6 FPT_SSP.2 Mutual trusted acknowledgement

Hierarchical to: FPT_SSP.1 Simple trusted acknowledgement

Dependencies: FPT_ITT.1 Basic internal TSF data transfer protection

14.9.6.1 FPT_SSP.2.1

The TSF shall acknowledge, when requested by another part of the TSF, the receipt of an unmodified TSF data transmission.

14.9.6.2 FPT_SSP.2.2

The TSF shall ensure that the relevant parts of the TSF know the correct status of transmitted data among its different parts, using acknowledgements.

14.10 Time stamps (FPT_STM)

14.10.1 Family Behaviour

This family addresses requirements for a reliable time stamp function within a TOE.

14.10.2 Component levelling

This family consists of only one component, FPT_STM.1 Reliable time stamps, which requires that the TSF provide reliable time stamps for TSF functions.

14.10.3 Management of FPT_STM.1

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) management of the time.

14.10.4 Audit of FPT_STM.1

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: changes to the time.
- b) Detailed: providing a timestamp.

14.10.5 FPT_STM.1 Reliable time stamps

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

14.10.5.1 FPT_STM.1.1

The TSF shall be able to provide reliable time stamps.

14.11 Inter-TSF TSF data consistency (FPT_TDC)

14.11.1 Family Behaviour

In a distributed environment, a TOE may need to exchange TSF data (e.g. the SFP-attributes associated with data, audit information, identification information) with another trusted IT product, This family defines the requirements for sharing and consistent interpretation of these attributes between the TSF of the TOE and a different trusted IT product.

14.11.2 Component levelling

FPT_TDC.1 Inter-TSF basic TSF data consistency, requires that the TSF provide the capability to ensure consistency of attributes between TSFs.

14.11.3 Management of FPT_TDC.1

There are no management activities foreseen.

14.11.4 Audit of FPT_TDC.1

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: Successful use of TSF data consistency mechanisms.
- b) Basic: Use of the TSF data consistency mechanisms.
- c) Basic: Identification of which TSF data have been interpreted.

d) Basic: Detection of modified TSF data.

14.11.5 FPT_TDC.1 Inter-TSF basic TSF data consistency

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

14.11.5.1 FPT_TDC.1.1

The TSF shall provide the capability to consistently interpret [assignment: *list of TSF data types*] when shared between the TSF and another trusted IT product.

14.11.5.2 FPT_TDC.1.2

The TSF shall use [assignment: *list of interpretation rules to be applied by the TSF*] when interpreting the TSF data from another trusted IT product.

14.12 Testing of external entities (FPT_TEE)

14.12.1 Family Behaviour

This family defines requirements for the TSF to perform tests on one or more external entities.

This component is not intended to be applied to human users.

External entities may include applications running on the TOE, hardware or software running “underneath” the TOE (platforms, operating systems etc.) or applications/boxes connected to the TOE (intrusion detection systems, firewalls, login servers, time servers etc.).

14.12.2 Component levelling

FPT_TEE.1 Testing of external entities, provides for testing of the external entities by the TSF.

14.12.3 Management of FPT_TEE.1

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) management of the conditions under which the testing of external entities occurs, such as during initial start-up, regular interval, or under specified conditions;
- b) management of the time interval if appropriate.

14.12.4 Audit of FPT_TEE.1

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Basic: Execution of the tests of the external entities and the results of the tests.

14.12.5 FPT_TEE.1 Testing of external entities

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

14.12.5.1 FPT_TEE.1.1

The TSF shall run a suite of tests [selection: *during initial start-up, periodically during normal operation, at the request of an authorised user, [assignment: other conditions]*] to check the fulfillment of [assignment: *list of properties of the external entities*] .

14.12.5.2 FPT_TEE.1.2

If the test fails, the TSF shall [assignment: *action(s)*] .

14.13 Internal TOE TSF data replication consistency (FPT_TRC)

14.13.1 Family Behaviour

The requirements of this family are needed to ensure the consistency of TSF data when such data is replicated internal to the TOE. Such data may become inconsistent if the internal channel between parts of the TOE becomes inoperative. If the TOE is internally structured as a network and parts of the TOE network connections are broken, this may occur when parts become disabled.

14.13.2 Component levelling

This family consists of only one component, FPT_TRC.1 Internal TSF consistency, which requires that the TSF ensure the consistency of TSF data that is replicated in multiple locations.

14.13.3 Management of FPT_TRC.1

There are no management activities foreseen.

14.13.4 Audit of FPT_TRC.1

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: restoring consistency upon reconnection.
- b) Basic: Detected inconsistency between TSF data.

14.13.5 FPT_TRC.1 Internal TSF consistency

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FPT_ITL.1 Basic internal TSF data transfer protection

14.13.5.1 FPT_TRC.1.1

The TSF shall ensure that TSF data is consistent when replicated between parts of the TOE.

14.13.5.2 FPT_TRC.1.2

When parts of the TOE containing replicated TSF data are disconnected, the TSF shall ensure the consistency of the replicated TSF data upon reconnection before processing any requests for [assignment: *list of functions dependent on TSF data replication consistency*].

14.14 TSF self test (FPT_TST)

14.14.1 Family Behaviour

The family defines the requirements for the self-testing of the TSF with respect to some expected correct operation. Examples are interfaces to enforcement functions, and sample arithmetical operations on critical

parts of the TOE. These tests can be carried out at start-up, periodically, at the request of the authorised user, or when other conditions are met. The actions to be taken by the TOE as the result of self testing are defined in other families.

The requirements of this family are also needed to detect the corruption of TSF executable code (i.e. TSF software) and TSF data by various failures that do not necessarily stop the TOE's operation (which would be handled by other families). These checks must be performed because these failures may not necessarily be prevented. Such failures can occur either because of unforeseen failure modes or associated oversights in the design of hardware, firmware, or software, or because of malicious corruption of the TSF due to inadequate logical and/or physical protection.

14.14.2 Component levelling

FPT_TST.1 TSF testing, provides the ability to test the TSF's correct operation. These tests may be performed at start-up, periodically, at the request of the authorised user, or when other conditions are met. It also provides the ability to verify the integrity of TSF data and executable code.

14.14.3 Management of FPT_TST.1

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) management of the conditions under which TSF self testing occurs, such as during initial start-up, regular interval, or under specified conditions;
- b) management of the time interval if appropriate.

14.14.4 Audit of FPT_TST.1

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Basic: Execution of the TSF self tests and the results of the tests.

14.14.5 FPT_TST.1 TSF testing

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

14.14.5.1 FPT_TST.1.1

The TSF shall run a suite of self tests [selection: *during initial start-up, periodically during normal operation, at the request of the authorised user, at the conditions*][assignment: *conditions under which self test should occur*] to demonstrate the correct operation of [selection: [assignment: *parts of TSF, the TSF*].

14.14.5.2 FPT_TST.1.2

The TSF shall provide authorised users with the capability to verify the integrity of [selection: [assignment: *parts of TSF, TSF data*].

14.14.5.3 FPT_TST.1.3

The TSF shall provide authorised users with the capability to verify the integrity of stored TSF executable code.

15 Class FRU: Resource utilisation

This class provides three families that support the availability of required resources such as processing capability and/or storage capacity. The family Fault Tolerance provides protection against unavailability of capabilities caused by failure of the TOE. The family Priority of Service ensures that the resources will be allocated to the more important or time-critical tasks and cannot be monopolised by lower priority tasks. The family Resource Allocation provides limits on the use of available resources, therefore preventing users from monopolising the resources.

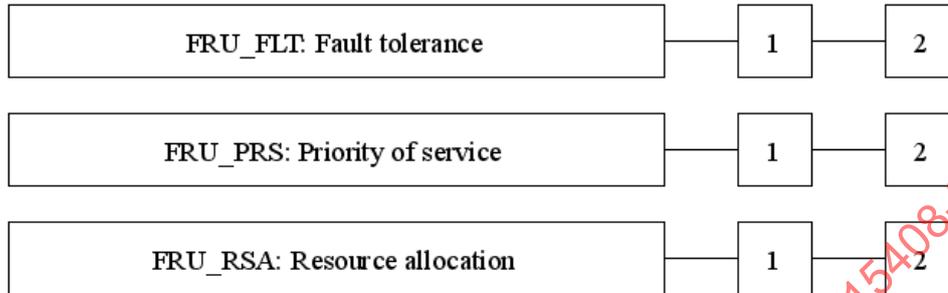


Figure 15 - FRU: Resource utilisation class decomposition

15.1 Fault tolerance (FRU_FLT)

15.1.1 Family Behaviour

The requirements of this family ensure that the TOE will maintain correct operation even in the event of failures.

15.1.2 Component levelling

FRU_FLT.1 Degraded fault tolerance, requires the TOE to continue correct operation of identified capabilities in the event of identified failures.

FRU_FLT.2 Limited fault tolerance, requires the TOE to continue correct operation of all capabilities in the event of identified failures.

15.1.3 Management of FRU_FLT.1, FRU_FLT.2

There are no management activities foreseen.

15.1.4 Audit of FRU_FLT.1

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: Any failure detected by the TSF.
- b) Basic: All TOE capabilities being discontinued due to a failure.

15.1.5 Audit of FRU_FLT.2

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: Any failure detected by the TSF.

15.1.6 FRU_FLT.1 Degraded fault tolerance

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FPT_FLS.1 Failure with preservation of secure state

15.1.6.1 FRU_FLT.1.1

The TSF shall ensure the operation of [assignment: *list of TOE capabilities*] when the following failures occur: [assignment: *list of type of failures*].

15.1.7 FRU_FLT.2 Limited fault tolerance

Hierarchical to: FRU_FLT.1 Degraded fault tolerance

Dependencies: FPT_FLS.1 Failure with preservation of secure state

15.1.7.1 FRU_FLT.2.1

The TSF shall ensure the operation of **all the TOE's capabilities** when the following failures occur: [assignment: *list of type of failures*].

15.2 Priority of service (FRU_PRS)**15.2.1 Family Behaviour**

The requirements of this family allow the TSF to control the use of resources under the control of the TSF by users and subjects such that high priority activities under the control of the TSF will always be accomplished without undue interference or delay caused by low priority activities.

15.2.2 Component levelling

FRU_PRS.1 Limited priority of service, provides priorities for a subject's use of a subset of the resources under the control of the TSF.

FRU_PRS.2 Full priority of service, provides priorities for a subject's use of all of the resources under the control of the TSF.

15.2.3 Management of FRU_PRS.1, FRU_PRS.2

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) assignment of priorities to each subject in the TSF.

15.2.4 Audit of FRU_PRS.1, FRU_PRS.2

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: Rejection of operation based on the use of priority within an allocation.
- b) Basic: All attempted uses of the allocation function which involves the priority of the service functions.

15.2.5 FRU_PRS.1 Limited priority of service

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

15.2.5.1 FRU_PRS.1.1

The TSF shall assign a priority to each subject in the TSF.

15.2.5.2 FRU_PRS.1.2

The TSF shall ensure that each access to [assignment: *controlled resources*] shall be mediated on the basis of the subjects assigned priority.

15.2.6 FRU_PRS.2 Full priority of service

Hierarchical to: FRU_PRS.1 Limited priority of service

Dependencies: No dependencies.

15.2.6.1 FRU_PRS.2.1

The TSF shall assign a priority to each subject in the TSF.

15.2.6.2 FRU_PRS.2.2

The TSF shall ensure that each access to **all shareable resources** shall be mediated on the basis of the subjects assigned priority.

15.3 Resource allocation (FRU_RSA)

15.3.1 Family Behaviour

The requirements of this family allow the TSF to control the use of resources by users and subjects such that denial of service will not occur because of unauthorised monopolisation of resources.

15.3.2 Component levelling

FRU_RSA.1 Maximum quotas, provides requirements for quota mechanisms that ensure that users and subjects will not monopolise a controlled resource.

FRU_RSA.2 Minimum and maximum quotas, provides requirements for quota mechanisms that ensure that users and subjects will always have at least a minimum of a specified resource and that they will not be able to monopolise a controlled resource.

15.3.3 Management of FRU_RSA.1

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) specifying maximum limits for a resource for groups and/or individual users and/or subjects by an administrator.

15.3.4 Management of FRU_RSA.2

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) specifying minimum and maximum limits for a resource for groups and/or individual users and/or subjects by an administrator.

15.3.5 Audit of FRU_RSA.1, FRU_RSA.2

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: Rejection of allocation operation due to resource limits.
- b) Basic: All attempted uses of the resource allocation functions for resources that are under control of the TSF.

15.3.6 FRU_RSA.1 Maximum quotas

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

15.3.6.1 FRU_RSA.1.1

The TSF shall enforce maximum quotas of the following resources: [assignment: *controlled resources*] that [selection: *individual user, defined group of users, subjects*] can use [selection: *simultaneously, over a specified period of time*].

15.3.7 FRU_RSA.2 Minimum and maximum quotas

Hierarchical to: FRU_RSA.1 Maximum quotas

Dependencies: No dependencies.

15.3.7.1 FRU_RSA.2.1

The TSF shall enforce maximum quotas of the following resources [assignment: *controlled resources*] that [selection: *individual user, defined group of users, subjects*] can use [selection: *simultaneously, over a specified period of time*].

15.3.7.2 FRU_RSA.2.2

The TSF shall ensure the provision of minimum quantity of each [assignment: *controlled resource*] that is available for [selection: *an individual user, defined group of users, subjects*] to use [selection: *simultaneously, over a specified period of time*].

16 Class FTA: TOE access

This family specifies functional requirements for controlling the establishment of a user's session.

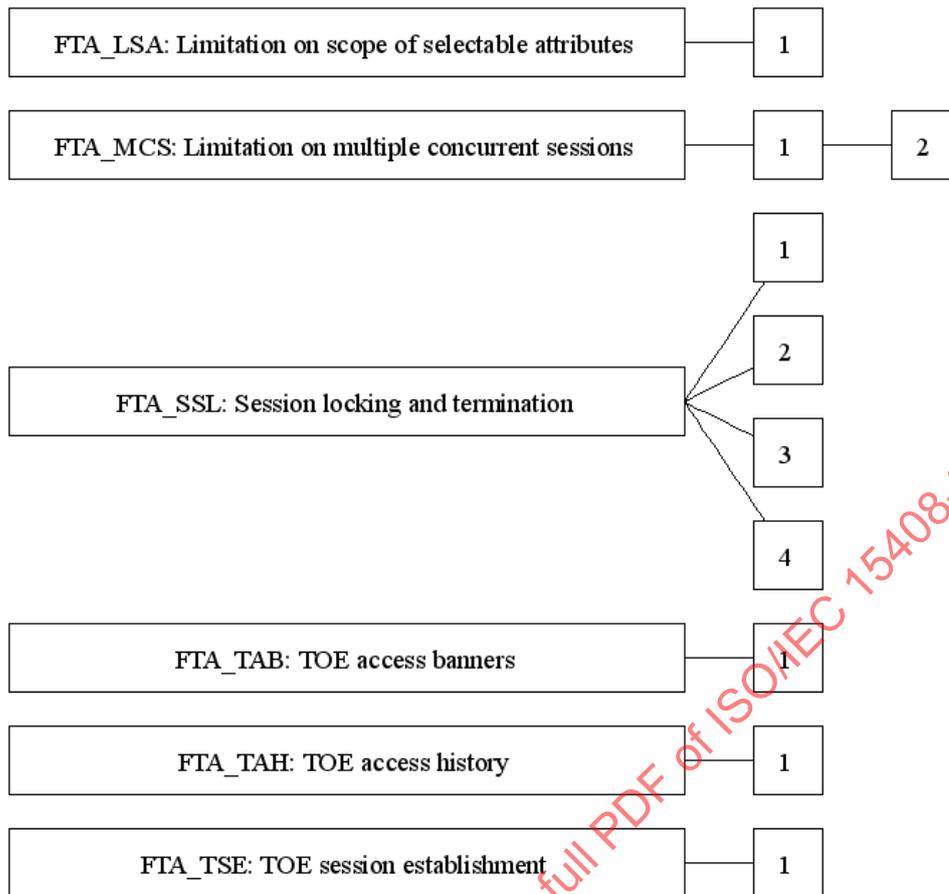


Figure 16 - FTA: TOE access class decomposition

16.1 Limitation on scope of selectable attributes (FTA_LSA)

16.1.1 Family Behaviour

This family defines requirements to limit the scope of session security attributes that a user may select for a session.

16.1.2 Component levelling

FTA_LSA.1 Limitation on scope of selectable attributes, provides the requirement for a TOE to limit the scope of the session security attributes during session establishment.

16.1.3 Management of FTA_LSA.1

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) management of the scope of the session security attributes by an administrator.

16.1.4 Audit of FTA_LSA.1

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: All failed attempts at selecting a session security attributes.
- b) Basic: All attempts at selecting a session security attributes.

c) Detailed: Capture of the values of each session security attributes.

16.1.5 FTA_LSA.1 Limitation on scope of selectable attributes

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

16.1.5.1 FTA_LSA.1.1

The TSF shall restrict the scope of the session security attributes [assignment: *session security attributes*], based on [assignment: *attributes*].

16.2 Limitation on multiple concurrent sessions (FTA_MCS)

16.2.1 Family Behaviour

This family defines requirements to place limits on the number of concurrent sessions that belong to the same user.

16.2.2 Component levelling

FTA_MCS.1 Basic limitation on multiple concurrent sessions, provides limitations that apply to all users of the TSF.

FTA_MCS.2 Per user attribute limitation on multiple concurrent sessions extends FTA_MCS.1 Basic limitation on multiple concurrent sessions by requiring the ability to specify limitations on the number of concurrent sessions based on the related security attributes.

16.2.3 Management of FTA_MCS.1

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

a) management of the maximum allowed number of concurrent user sessions by an administrator.

16.2.4 Management of FTA_MCS.2

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

a) management of the rules that govern the maximum allowed number of concurrent user sessions by an administrator.

16.2.5 Audit of FTA_MCS.1, FTA_MCS.2

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

a) Minimal: Rejection of a new session based on the limitation of multiple concurrent sessions.

b) Detailed: Capture of the number of currently concurrent user sessions and the user security attribute(s).

16.2.6 FTA_MCS.1 Basic limitation on multiple concurrent sessions

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FIA_UID.1 Timing of identification

16.2.6.1 FTA_MCS.1.1

The TSF shall restrict the maximum number of concurrent sessions that belong to the same user.

16.2.6.2 FTA_MCS.1.2

The TSF shall enforce, by default, a limit of [assignment: *default number*] sessions per user.

16.2.7 FTA_MCS.2 Per user attribute limitation on multiple concurrent sessions

Hierarchical to: FTA_MCS.1 Basic limitation on multiple concurrent sessions

Dependencies: FIA_UID.1 Timing of identification

16.2.7.1 FTA_MCS.2.1

The TSF shall restrict the maximum number of concurrent sessions that belong to the same user according to the rules [assignment: *rules for the number of maximum concurrent sessions*]

16.2.7.2 FTA_MCS.2.2

The TSF shall enforce, by default, a limit of [assignment: *default number*] sessions per user.

16.3 Session locking and termination (FTA_SSL)

16.3.1 Family Behaviour

This family defines requirements for the TSF to provide the capability for TSF-initiated and user-initiated locking, unlocking, and termination of interactive sessions.

16.3.2 Component levelling

FTA_SSL.1 TSF-initiated session locking includes system initiated locking of an interactive session after a specified period of user inactivity.

FTA_SSL.2 User-initiated locking, provides capabilities for the user to lock and unlock the user's own interactive sessions.

FTA_SSL.3 TSF-initiated termination, provides requirements for the TSF to terminate the session after a specified period of user inactivity.

FTA_SSL.4 User-initiated termination, provides capabilities for the user to terminate the user's own interactive sessions.

16.3.3 Management of FTA_SSL.1

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) specification of the time of user inactivity after which lock-out occurs for an individual user;
- b) specification of the default time of user inactivity after which lock-out occurs;
- c) management of the events that should occur prior to unlocking the session.

16.3.4 Management of FTA_SSL.2

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) management of the events that should occur prior to unlocking the session.

16.3.5 Management of FTA_SSL.3

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) specification of the time of user inactivity after which termination of the interactive session occurs for an individual user;
- b) specification of the default time of user inactivity after which termination of the interactive session occurs.

16.3.6 Management of FTA_SSL.4

There are no management activities foreseen.

16.3.7 Audit of FTA_SSL.1, FTA_SSL.2

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: Locking of an interactive session by the session locking mechanism.
- b) Minimal: Successful unlocking of an interactive session.
- c) Basic: Any attempts at unlocking an interactive session.

16.3.8 Audit of FTA_SSL.3

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: Termination of an interactive session by the session locking mechanism.

16.3.9 Audit of FTA_SSL.4

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: Termination of an interactive session by the user.

16.3.10 FTA_SSL.1 TSF-initiated session locking

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FIA_UAU.1 Timing of authentication

16.3.10.1 FTA_SSL.1.1

The TSF shall lock an interactive session after [assignment: *time interval of user inactivity*] by:

- a) clearing or overwriting display devices, making the current contents unreadable;
- b) disabling any activity of the user's data access/display devices other than unlocking the session.

16.3.10.2 FTA_SSL.1.2

The TSF shall require the following events to occur prior to unlocking the session: [assignment: *events to occur*].

16.3.11 FTA_SSL.2 User-initiated locking

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FIA_UAU.1 Timing of authentication

16.3.11.1 FTA_SSL.2.1

The TSF shall allow user-initiated locking of the user's own interactive session, by:

- a) clearing or overwriting display devices, making the current contents unreadable;
- b) disabling any activity of the user's data access/display devices other than unlocking the session.

16.3.11.2 FTA_SSL.2.2

The TSF shall require the following events to occur prior to unlocking the session: [assignment: *events to occur*].

16.3.12 FTA_SSL.3 TSF-initiated termination

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

16.3.12.1 FTA_SSL.3.1

The TSF shall terminate an interactive session after a [assignment: *time interval of user inactivity*].

16.3.13 FTA_SSL.4 User-initiated termination

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

16.3.13.1 FTA_SSL.4.1

The TSF shall allow user-initiated termination of the user's own interactive session.

16.4 TOE access banners (FTA_TAB)

16.4.1 Family Behaviour

This family defines requirements to display a configurable advisory warning message to users regarding the appropriate use of the TOE.

16.4.2 Component levelling

FTA_TAB.1 Default TOE access banners, provides the requirement for a TOE Access Banner. This banner is displayed prior to the establishment dialogue for a session.

16.4.3 Management of FTA_TAB.1

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) maintenance of the banner by the authorised administrator.

16.4.4 Audit of FTA_TAB.1

There are no auditable events foreseen.

16.4.5 FTA_TAB.1 Default TOE access banners

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

16.4.5.1 FTA_TAB.1.1

Before establishing a user session, the TSF shall display an advisory warning message regarding unauthorised use of the TOE.

16.5 TOE access history (FTA_TAH)**16.5.1 Family Behaviour**

This family defines requirements for the TSF to display to a user, upon successful session establishment, a history of successful and unsuccessful attempts to access the user's account.

16.5.2 Component levelling

FTA_TAH.1 TOE access history, provides the requirement for a TOE to display information related to previous attempts to establish a session.

16.5.3 Management of FTA_TAH.1

There are no management activities foreseen.

16.5.4 Audit of FTA_TAH.1

There are no auditable events foreseen.

16.5.5 FTA_TAH.1 TOE access history

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

16.5.5.1 FTA_TAH.1.1

Upon successful session establishment, the TSF shall display the [selection: *date*, *time*, *method*, *location*] of the last successful session establishment to the user.

16.5.5.2 FTA_TAH.1.2

Upon successful session establishment, the TSF shall display the [selection: *date*, *time*, *method*, *location*] of the last unsuccessful attempt to session establishment and the number of unsuccessful attempts since the last successful session establishment.

16.5.5.3 FTA_TAH.1.3

The TSF shall not erase the access history information from the user interface without giving the user an opportunity to review the information.

16.6 TOE session establishment (FTA_TSE)

16.6.1 Family Behaviour

This family defines requirements to deny a user permission to establish a session with the TOE.

16.6.2 Component levelling

FTA_TSE.1 TOE session establishment, provides requirements for denying users access to the TOE based on attributes.

16.6.3 Management of FTA_TSE.1

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) management of the session establishment conditions by the authorised administrator.

16.6.4 Audit of FTA_TSE.1

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: Denial of a session establishment due to the session establishment mechanism.
- b) Basic: All attempts at establishment of a user session.
- c) Detailed: Capture of the value of the selected access parameters (e.g. location of access, time of access).

16.6.5 FTA_TSE.1 TOE session establishment

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

16.6.5.1 FTA_TSE.1.1

The TSF shall be able to deny session establishment based on [assignment: *attributes*].

17 Class FTP: Trusted path/channels

Families in this class provide requirements for a trusted communication path between users and the TSF, and for a trusted communication channel between the TSF and other trusted IT products. Trusted paths and channels have the following general characteristics:

- The communications path is constructed using internal and external communications channels (as appropriate for the component) that isolate an identified subset of TSF data and commands from the remainder of the TSF and user data.
- Use of the communications path may be initiated by the user and/or the TSF (as appropriate for the component).
- The communications path is capable of providing assurance that the user is communicating with the correct TSF, and that the TSF is communicating with the correct user (as appropriate for the component).

In this paradigm, a trusted channel is a communication channel that may be initiated by either side of the channel, and provides non-repudiation characteristics with respect to the identity of the sides of the channel.

A trusted path provides a means for users to perform functions through an assured direct interaction with the TSF. Trusted path is usually desired for user actions such as initial identification and/or authentication, but may also be desired at other times during a user's session. Trusted path exchanges may be initiated by a user or the TSF. User responses via the trusted path are guaranteed to be protected from modification by or disclosure to untrusted applications.

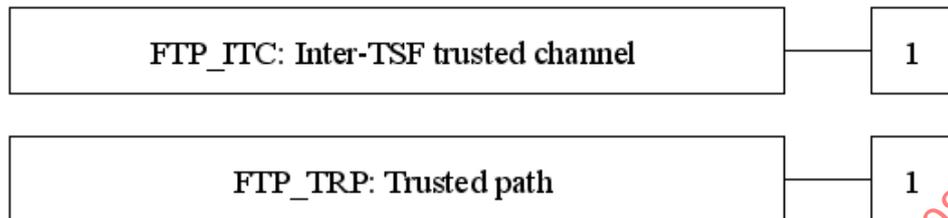


Figure 17 - FTP: Trusted path/channels class decomposition

17.1 Inter-TSF trusted channel (FTP_ITC)

17.1.1 Family Behaviour

This family defines requirements for the creation of a trusted channel between the TSF and other trusted IT products for the performance of security critical operations. This family should be included whenever there are requirements for the secure communication of user or TSF data between the TOE and other trusted IT products.

17.1.2 Component levelling

FTP_ITC.1 Inter-TSF trusted channel, requires that the TSF provide a trusted communication channel between itself and another trusted IT product.

17.1.3 Management of FTP_ITC.1

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) Configuring the actions that require trusted channel, if supported.

17.1.4 Audit of FTP_ITC.1

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: Failure of the trusted channel functions.
- b) Minimal: Identification of the initiator and target of failed trusted channel functions.
- c) Basic: All attempted uses of the trusted channel functions.
- d) Basic: Identification of the initiator and target of all trusted channel functions.

17.1.5 FTP_ITC.1 Inter-TSF trusted channel

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

17.1.5.1 FTP_ITC.1.1

The TSF shall provide a communication channel between itself and another trusted IT product that is logically distinct from other communication channels and provides assured identification of its end points and protection of the channel data from modification or disclosure.

17.1.5.2 FTP_ITC.1.2

The TSF shall permit [selection: *the TSF, another trusted IT product*] to initiate communication via the trusted channel.

17.1.5.3 FTP_ITC.1.3

The TSF shall initiate communication via the trusted channel for [assignment: *list of functions for which a trusted channel is required*].

17.2 Trusted path (FTP_TRP)

17.2.1 Family Behaviour

This family defines the requirements to establish and maintain trusted communication to or from users and the TSF. A trusted path may be required for any security-relevant interaction. Trusted path exchanges may be initiated by a user during an interaction with the TSF, or the TSF may establish communication with the user via a trusted path.

17.2.2 Component levelling

FTP_TRP.1 Trusted path, requires that a trusted path between the TSF and a user be provided for a set of events defined by a PP/ST author. The user and/or the TSF may have the ability to initiate the trusted path.

17.2.3 Management of FTP_TRP.1

The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT:

- a) Configuring the actions that require trusted path, if supported.

17.2.4 Audit of FTP_TRP.1

The following actions should be auditable if FAU_GEN Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: Failures of the trusted path functions.
- b) Minimal: Identification of the user associated with all trusted path failures, if available.
- c) Basic: All attempted uses of the trusted path functions.
- d) Basic: Identification of the user associated with all trusted path invocations, if available.

17.2.5 FTP_TRP.1 Trusted path

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

17.2.5.1 FTP_TRP.1.1

The TSF shall provide a communication path between itself and [selection: *remote, local*] users that is logically distinct from other communication paths and provides assured identification of its end

points and protection of the communicated data from [selection: *modification, disclosure, [assignment: other types of integrity or confidentiality violation]*].

17.2.5.2 FTP_TRP.1.2

The TSF shall permit [selection: *the TSF, local users, remote users*] to initiate communication via the trusted path.

17.2.5.3 FTP_TRP.1.3

The TSF shall require the use of the trusted path for [selection: *initial user authentication, [assignment: other services for which trusted path is required]*].

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of ISO/IEC 15408-2:2008

Annex A (normative)

Security functional requirements application notes

This annex contains additional guidance for the families and components defined in the elements of this part of ISO/IEC 15408, which may be required by users, developers or evaluators to use the components. To facilitate finding the appropriate information, the presentation of the classes, families and components in this annex is similar to the presentation within the elements.

A.1 Structure of the notes

This clause defines the content and presentation of the notes related to functional requirements of ISO/IEC 15408.

A.1.1 Class structure

Figure A.1 below illustrates the functional class structure in this annex.

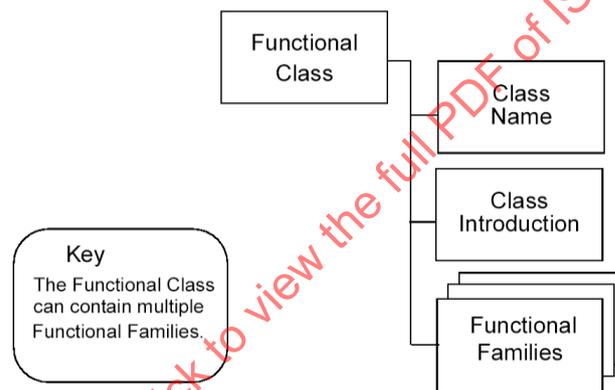


Figure A.1 - Functional class structure

A.1.1.1 Class name

This is the unique name of the class defined within the normative elements of this part of ISO/IEC 15408.

A.1.1.2 Class introduction

The class introduction in this annex provides information about the use of the families and components of the class. This information is completed with the informative diagram that describes the organisation of each class with the families in each class and the hierarchical relationship between components in each family.

A.1.2 Family structure

Figure A.2 illustrates the functional family structure for application notes in diagrammatic form.

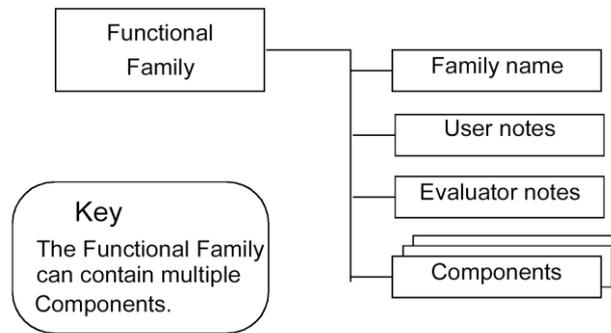


Figure A.2 - Functional family structure for application notes

A.1.2.1 Family name

This is the unique name of the family defined within the normative elements of this part of ISO/IEC 15408.

A.1.2.2 User notes

The user notes contain additional information that is of interest to potential users of the family, that is PP, ST and functional package authors, and developers of TOEs incorporating the functional components. The presentation is informative, and might cover warnings about limitations of use and areas where specific attention might be required when using the components.

A.1.2.3 Evaluator notes

The evaluator notes contain any information that is of interest to developers and evaluators of TOEs that claim compliance with a component of the family. The presentation is informative and can cover a variety of areas where specific attention might be needed when evaluating the TOE. This can include clarifications of meaning and specification of the way to interpret requirements, as well as caveats and warnings of specific interest to evaluators.

These User Notes and Evaluator Notes subclauses are not mandatory and appear only if appropriate.

A.1.3 Component structure

Figure A.3 illustrates the functional component structure for the application notes.

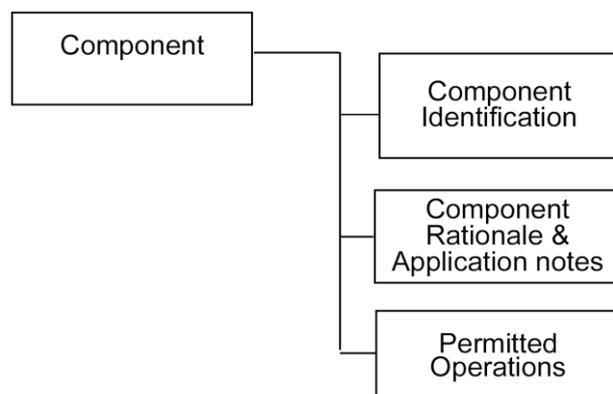


Figure A.3 - Functional component structure

A.1.3.1 Component identification

This is the unique name of the component defined within the normative elements of this part of ISO/IEC 15408.

A.1.3.2 Component rationale and application notes

Any specific information related to the component can be found in this subclause.

- The *rationale* contains the specifics of the rationale that refine the general statements on rationale for the specific level, and should only be used if level specific amplification is required.
- The *application notes* contain additional refinement in terms of narrative qualification as it pertains to a specific component. This refinement can pertain to user notes, and/or evaluator notes as described in Subclause A.1.2. This refinement can be used to explain the nature of the dependencies (e.g. shared information, or shared operation).

This subclause is not mandatory and appears only if appropriate.

A.1.3.3 Permitted operations

This portion of each component contains advice relating to the permitted operations of the component.

This subclause is not mandatory and appears only if appropriate.

A.2 Dependency tables

The following dependency tables for functional components show their direct, indirect and optional dependencies. Each of the components that is a dependency of some functional component is allocated a column. Each functional component is allocated a row. The value in the table cell indicate whether the column label component is directly required (indicated by a cross "X"), indirectly required (indicated by a dash "-"), or optionally required (indicated by a "o") by the row label component. An example of a component with optional dependencies is FDP_ETC.1 Export of user data without security attributes, which requires either FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control or FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control to be present. So if FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control is present, FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control is not necessary and vice versa. If no character is presented, the component is not dependent upon another component.

	FAU_GEN.1	FAU_SAA.1	FAU_SAR.1	FAU_STG.1	FIA_UID.1	FMT_MTD.1	FMT_SMF.1	FMT_SMR.1	FPT_STM.1
FAU_ARP.1	-	X							-
FAU_GEN.1									X
FAU_GEN.2	X				X				-
FAU_SAA.1	X								-
FAU_SAA.2					X				-
FAU_SAA.3									-
FAU_SAA.4									-
FAU_SAR.1	X								-
FAU_SAR.2	-		X						-
FAU_SAR.3	-		X						-
FAU_SEL.1	X				-	X		-	-
FAU_STG.1	X								-
FAU_STG.2	X								-
FAU_STG.3	-			X					-
FAU_STG.4	-			X					-

Table A.1 Dependency table for Class FAU: Security audit

	FIA_UID.1
FCO_NRO.1	X
FCO_NRO.2	X
FCO_NRR.1	X
FCO_NRR.2	X

Table A.2 Dependency table for Class FCO: Communication

	FIA_UID.1	-	
	FIA_UAU.1	X	
	FIA_ATD.1		
FIA_AFL.1			
FIA_ATD.1			
FIA_SOS.1			
FIA_SOS.2			
FIA_UAU.1			X
FIA_UAU.2			X
FIA_UAU.3			
FIA_UAU.4			
FIA_UAU.5			
FIA_UAU.6			
FIA_UAU.7		X	-
FIA_UID.1			
FIA_UID.2			
FIA_USB.1	X		

Table A.5 Dependency table for Class FIA: Identification and authentication

	FDP_ACC.1	FDP_ACF.1	FDP_IFC.1	FDP_IFF.1	FIA_UID.1	FMT_MSA.1	FMT_MSA.3	FMT_MTD.1	FMT_SMF.1	FMT_SMR.1	FPT_STM.1
FMT_MOF.1					-				X	X	
FMT_MSA.1	O	-	O	-	-	-			X	X	
FMT_MSA.2	O	-	O	-	-	X			-	X	
FMT_MSA.3	-	-	-	-	-	X			-	X	
FMT_MSA.4	O	-	O	-	-	-			-	-	
FMT_MTD.1					-				X	X	
FMT_MTD.2					-			X	-	X	
FMT_MTD.3					-			X	-	-	
FMT_REV.1					-					X	
FMT_SAE.1					-					X	X
FMT_SMF.1											
FMT_SMR.1					X						
FMT_SMR.2					X						
FMT_SMR.3					-					X	

Table A.6 Dependency table for Class FMT: Security management

	FPR_UNO.1	
	FIA_UID.1	
FPR_ANO.1		
FPR_ANO.2		
FPR_PSE.1		
FPR_PSE.2	X	
FPR_PSE.3		
FPR_UNL.1		
FPR_UNO.1		
FPR_UNO.2		
FPR_UNO.3		X
FPR_UNO.4		

Table A.7 Dependency table for Class FPR: Privacy

	AGD_OPE.1	FIA_UID.1	FMT_MOF.1	FMT_SMF.1	FMT_SMR.1	FPT_ITT.1
FPT_FLS.1						
FPT_ITA.1						
FPT_ITC.1						
FPT_ITI.1						
FPT_ITI.2						
FPT_ITT.1						
FPT_ITT.2						
FPT_ITT.3						X
FPT_PHP.1						
FPT_PHP.2		-	X	-	-	
FPT_PHP.3						
FPT_RCV.1	X					
FPT_RCV.2	X					
FPT_RCV.3	X					
FPT_RCV.4						
FPT_RPL.1						
FPT_SSP.1						X
FPT_SSP.2						X
FPT_STM.1						
FPT_TDC.1						
FPT_TEE.1						
FPT_TRC.1						X
FPT_TST.1						

Table A.8 Dependency table for Class FPT: Protection of the TSF

	FPT_FLS.1
FRU_FLT.1	X
FRU_FLT.2	X
FRU_PRS.1	
FRU_PRS.2	
FRU_RSA.1	
FRU_RSA.2	

Table A.9 Dependency table for Class FRU: Resource utilisation

	FIA_UAU.1	FIA_UID.1
FTA_LSA.1		
FTA_MCS.1		X
FTA_MCS.2		X
FTA_SSL.1	X	-
FTA_SSL.2	X	-
FTA_SSL.3		
FTA_SSL.4		
FTA_TAB.1		
FTA_TAH.1		
FTA_TSE.1		

Table A.10 Dependency table for Class FTA: TOE access

Annex B
(normative)

Functional classes, families, and components

The following annexes Annex C through Annex M provide the application notes for the functional classes defined in the main body of this part of ISO/IEC 15408.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of ISO/IEC 15408-2:2008

Annex C (normative)

Class FAU: Security audit

ISO/IEC 15408 audit families allow PP/ST authors the ability to define requirements for monitoring user activities and, in some cases, detecting real, possible, or imminent violations of the enforcement of the SFRs. The TOE's security audit functions are defined to help monitor security-relevant events, and act as a deterrent against security violations. The requirements of the audit families refer to functions that include audit data protection, record format, and event selection, as well as analysis tools, violation alarms, and real-time analysis. The audit trail should be presented in human-readable format either directly (e.g. storing the audit trail in human-readable format) or indirectly (e.g. using audit reduction tools), or both.

While developing the security audit requirements, the PP/ST author should take note of the inter-relationships among the audit families and components. The potential exists to specify a set of audit requirements that comply with the family/component dependencies lists, while at the same time resulting in a deficient audit function (e.g. an audit function that requires all security relevant events to be audited but without the selectivity to control them on any reasonable basis such as individual user or object).

C.1 Audit requirements in a distributed environment

The implementation of audit requirements for networks and other large systems may differ significantly from those needed for stand-alone systems. Larger, more complex and active systems require more thought concerning which audit data to collect and how this should be managed, due to lowered feasibility of interpreting (or even storing) what gets collected. The traditional notion of a time-ordered list or "trail" of audited events may not be applicable in a global asynchronous network with arbitrarily many events occurring at once.

Also, different hosts and servers on a distributed TOE may have differing naming policies and values. Symbolic names presentation for audit review may require a net-wide convention to avoid redundancies and "name clashes."

A multi-object audit repository, portions of which are accessible by a potentially wide variety of authorised users, may be required if audit repositories are to serve a useful function in distributed systems.

Finally, misuse of authority by authorised users should be addressed by systematically avoiding local storage of audit data pertaining to administrator actions.

Figure C.1 shows the decomposition of this class into its constituent components.

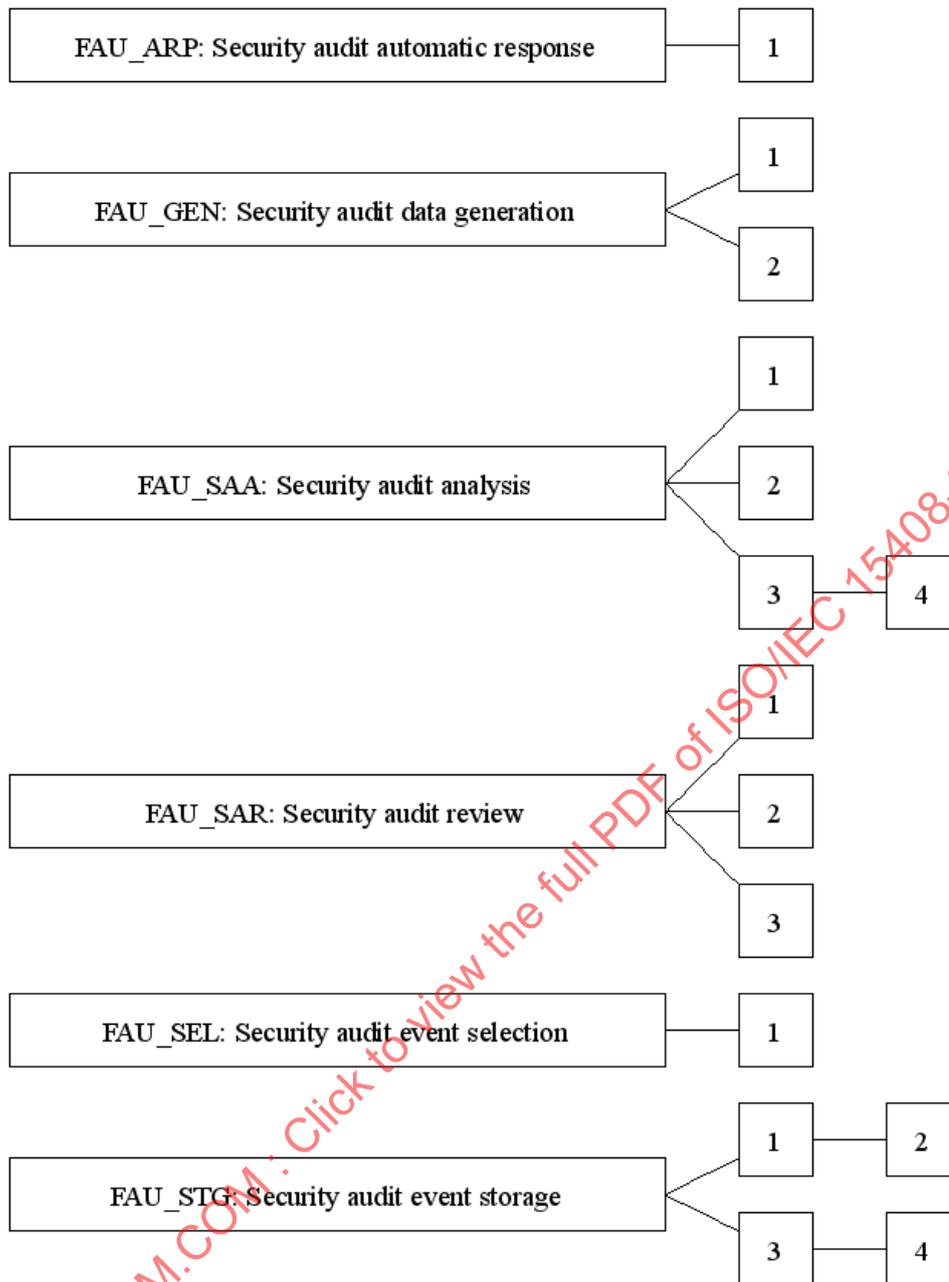


Figure C.1 - FAU: Security audit class decomposition

C.2 Security audit automatic response (FAU_ARP)

C.2.1 User notes

The Security audit automatic response family describes requirements for the handling of audit events. The requirement could include requirements for alarms or TSF action (automatic response). For example, the TSF could include the generation of real time alarms, termination of the offending process, disabling of a service, or disconnection or invalidation of a user account.

An audit event is defined to be an “potential security violation” if so indicated by the Security audit analysis (FAU_SAA) components.

C.2.2 FAU_ARP.1 Security alarms

C.2.2.1 User application notes

An action should be taken for follow up action in the event of an alarm. This action can be to inform the authorised user, to present the authorised user with a set of possible containment actions, or to take corrective actions. The timing of the actions should be carefully considered by the PP/ST author.

C.2.2.2 Operations

C.2.2.2.1 Assignment

In FAU_ARP.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify the actions to be taken in case of a potential security violation. An example of such a list is: "inform the authorised user, disable the subject that created the potential security violation." It can also specify that the action to be taken can be specified by an authorised user.

C.3 Security audit data generation (FAU_GEN)

C.3.1 User notes

The Security audit data generation family includes requirements to specify the audit events that should be generated by the TSF for security-relevant events.

This family is presented in a manner that avoids a dependency on all components requiring audit support. Each component has an audit subclause developed in which the events to be audited for that functional area are listed. When the PP/ST author assembles the PP/ST, the items in the audit area are used to complete the variable in this component. Thus, the specification of what could be audited for a functional area is localised in that functional area.

The list of auditable events is entirely dependent on the other functional families within the PP/ST. Each family definition should therefore include a list of its family-specific auditable events. Each auditable event in the list of auditable events specified in the functional family should correspond to one of the levels of audit event generation specified in this family (i.e. minimal, basic, detailed). This provides the PP/ST author with information necessary to ensure that all appropriate auditable events are specified in the PP/ST. The following example shows how auditable events are to be specified in appropriate functional families:

"The following actions should be auditable if Security audit data generation (FAU_GEN) is included in the PP/ST:

- a) Minimal: Successful use of the user security attribute administration functions.
- b) Basic: All attempted uses of the user security attribute administration functions.
- c) Basic: Identification of which user security attributes have been modified.
- d) Detailed: With the exception of specific sensitive attribute data items (e.g. passwords, cryptographic keys), the new values of the attributes should be captured."

For each functional component that is chosen, the auditable events that are indicated in that component, at and below the level indicated in Security audit data generation (FAU_GEN) should be auditable. If, for example, in the previous example "Basic" would be selected in Security audit data generation (FAU_GEN), the auditable events mentioned in a), b) and c) should be auditable.

Observe that the categorisation of auditable events is hierarchical. For example, when Basic Audit Generation is desired, all auditable events identified as being either Minimal or Basic, should also be included in the PP/ST through the use of the appropriate assignment operation, except when the higher level event simply provides more detail than the lower level event. When Detailed Audit Generation is desired, all identified auditable events (Minimal, Basic, and Detailed) should be included in the PP/ST.

A PP/ST author may decide to include other auditable events beyond those required for a given audit level. For example, the PP/ST may claim only minimal audit capabilities while including most of the basic capabilities because the few excluded capabilities conflict with other PP/ST constraints (e.g. because they require the collection of unavailable data).

The functionality that creates the auditable event should be specified in the PP or ST as a functional requirement.

The following are examples of the types of the events that should be defined as auditable within each PP/ST functional component:

- a) Introduction of objects within the control of the TSF into a subject's address space;
- b) Deletion of objects;
- c) Distribution or revocation of access rights or capabilities;
- d) Changes to subject or object security attributes;
- e) Policy checks performed by the TSF as a result of a request by a subject;
- f) The use of access rights to bypass a policy check;
- g) Use of Identification and Authentication functions;
- h) Actions taken by an operator, and/or authorised user (e.g. suppression of a TSF protection mechanism as human-readable labels);
- i) Import/export of data from/to removable media (e.g. printed output, tapes, diskettes).

C.3.2 FAU_GEN.1 Audit data generation

C.3.2.1 User application notes

This component defines requirements to identify the auditable events for which audit records should be generated, and the information to be provided in the audit records.

FAU_GEN.1 Audit data generation by itself might be used when the SFRs do not require that individual user identities be associated with audit events. This could be appropriate when the PP/ST also contains privacy requirements. If the user identity must be incorporated FAU_GEN.2 User identity association could be used in addition.

If the subject is a user, the user identity may be recorded as the subject identity. The identity of the user may not yet been verified if User authentication (FIA_UAU) has not been applied. Therefore in the instance of an invalid login the claimed user identity should be recorded. It should be considered to indicate when a recorded identity has not been authenticated.

C.3.2.2 Evaluator notes

There is a dependency on Time stamps (FPT_STM). If correctness of time is not an issue for this TOE, elimination of this dependency could be justified.

C.3.2.3 Operations

C.3.2.3.1 Selection

In FAU_GEN.1.1, the PP/ST author should select the level of auditable events called out in the audit subclause of other functional components included in the PP/ST. This level is one of the following: "minimum", "basic", "detailed" or "not specified".

C.3.2.3.2 Assignment

In FAU_GEN.1.1, the PP/ST author should assign a list of other specifically defined auditable events to be included in the list of auditable events. The assignment may comprise none, or events that could be auditable events of a functional requirement that are of a higher audit level than requested in b), as well as the events generated through the use of a specified Application Programming Interface (API).

In FAU_GEN.1.2, the PP/ST author should assign, for each auditable events included in the PP/ST, either a list of other audit relevant information to be included in audit events records or none.

C.3.3 FAU_GEN.2 User identity association

C.3.3.1 User application notes

This component addresses the requirement of accountability of auditable events at the level of individual user identity. This component should be used in addition to FAU_GEN.1 Audit data generation.

There is a potential conflict between the audit and privacy requirements. For audit purposes it may be desirable to know who performed an action. The user may want to keep his/her actions to himself/herself and not be identified by other persons (e.g. a site with job offers). Or it might be required in the Organisational Security Policy that the identity of the users must be protected. In those cases the objectives for audit and privacy might contradict each other. Therefore if this requirement is selected and privacy is important, inclusion of the component user pseudonymity might be considered. Requirements on determining the real user name based on its pseudonym are specified in the privacy class.

If the identity of the user has not yet been verified through authentication, in the instance of an invalid login the claimed user identity should be recorded. It should be considered to indicate when a recorded identity has not been authenticated.

C.4 Security audit analysis (FAU_SAA)

C.4.1 User notes

This family defines requirements for automated means that analyse system activity and audit data looking for possible or real security violations. This analysis may work in support of intrusion detection, or automatic response to a potential security violation.

The action to be performed by the TSF on detection of a potential violation is defined in Security audit automatic response (FAU_ARP) components.

For real-time analysis, audit data could be transformed into a useful format for automated treatment, but into a different useful format for delivery to authorised users for review.

C.4.2 FAU_SAA.1 Potential violation analysis

C.4.2.1 User application notes

This component is used to specify the set of auditable events whose occurrence or accumulated occurrence held to indicate a potential violation of the enforcement of the SFRs, and any rules to be used to perform the violation analysis.

C.4.2.2 Operations

C.4.2.2.1 Assignment

In FAU_SAA.1.2, the PP/ST author should identify the subset of defined auditable events whose occurrence or accumulated occurrence need to be detected as an indication of a potential violation of the enforcement of the SFRs.

In FAU_SAA.1.2, the PP/ST author should specify any other rules that the TSF should use in its analysis of the audit trail. Those rules could include specific requirements to express the needs for the events to occur in a certain period of time (e.g. period of the day, duration). If there are no additional rules that the TSF should use in the analysis of the audit trail, this assignment can be completed with "none".

C.4.3 FAU_SAA.2 Profile based anomaly detection

C.4.3.1 User application notes

A *profile* is a structure that characterises the behaviour of users and/or subjects; it represents how the users/subjects interact with the TSF in a variety of ways. Patterns of usage are established with respect to the various types of activity the users/subjects engage in (e.g. patterns in exceptions raised, patterns in resource utilisation (when, which, how), patterns in actions performed). The ways in which the various types of activity are recorded in the profile (e.g. resource measures, event counters, timers) are referred to as *profile metrics*.

Each profile represents the expected patterns of usage performed by members of the *profile target group*. This pattern may be based on past use (historical patterns) or on normal use for users of similar target groups (expected behaviour). A profile target group refers to one or more users who interact with the TSF. The activity of each member of the profile group is used by the analysis tool in establishing the usage patterns represented in the profile. The following are some examples of profile target groups:

- a) **Single user account:** one profile per user;
- b) **Group ID or Group Account:** one profile for all users who possess the same group ID or operate using the same group account;
- c) **Operating Role:** one profile for all users sharing a given operating role;
- d) **System:** one profile for all users of a system.

Each member of a profile target group is assigned an individual *suspicion rating* that represents how closely that member's new activity corresponds to the established patterns of usage represented in the group profile.

The sophistication of the anomaly detection tool will largely be determined by the number of target profile groups required by the PP/ST and the complexity of the required profile metrics.

The PP/ST author should enumerate specifically what activity should be monitored and/or analysed by the TSF. The PP/ST author should also identify specifically what information pertaining to the activity is necessary to construct the usage profiles.

FAU_SAA.2 Profile based anomaly detection requires that the TSF maintain profiles of system usage. The word maintain implies that the anomaly detector is actively updating the usage profile based on new activity performed by the profile target members. It is important here that the metrics for representing user activity are defined by the PP/ST author. For example, there may be a thousand different actions an individual may be capable of performing, but the anomaly detector may choose to monitor a subset of that activity. Anomalous activity gets integrated into the profile just like non-anomalous activity (assuming the tool is monitoring those actions). Things that may have appeared anomalous four months ago, might over time become the norm (and vice-versa) as the user's work duties change. The TSF wouldn't be able to capture this notion if it filtered out anomalous activity from the profile updating algorithms.

Administrative notification should be provided such that the authorised user understands the significance of the suspicion rating.

The PP/ST author should define how to interpret suspicion ratings and the conditions under which anomalous activity is indicated to the Security audit automatic response (FAU_ARP) mechanism.

C.4.3.2 Operations

C.4.3.2.1 Assignment

In FAU_SAA.2.1, the PP/ST author should specify the profile target group. A single PP/ST may include multiple profile target groups.

In FAU_SAA.2.3, the PP/ST author should specify conditions under which anomalous activity is reported by the TSF. Conditions may include the suspicion rating reaching a certain value, or be based on the type of anomalous activity observed.

C.4.4 FAU_SAA.3 Simple attack heuristics

C.4.4.1 User application notes

In practice, it is at best rare when an analysis tool can detect with certainty when a security violation is imminent. However, there do exist some system events that are so significant that they are always worthy of independent review. Example of such events include the deletion of a key TSF security data file (e.g. the password file) or activity such as a remote user attempting to gain administrative privilege. These events are referred to as signature events in that their occurrence in isolation from the rest of the system activity are indicative of intrusive activity.

The complexity of a given tool will depend greatly on the assignments defined by the PP/ST author in identifying the base set of *signature events*.

The PP/ST author should enumerate specifically what events should be monitored by the TSF in order to perform the analysis. The PP/ST author should identify specifically what information pertaining to the event is necessary to determine if the event maps to a signature event.

Administrative notification should be provided such that the authorised user understands the significance of the event and the appropriate possible responses.

An effort was made in the specification of these requirements to avoid a dependency on audit data as the sole input for monitoring system activity. This was done in recognition of the existence of previously developed intrusion detection tools that do not perform their analyses of system activity solely through the use of audit data (examples of other input data include network datagrams, resource/accounting data, or combinations of various system data).

The elements of FAU_SAA.3 Simple attack heuristics do not require that the TSF implementing the immediate attack heuristics be the same TSF whose activity is being monitored. Thus, one can develop an intrusion detection component that operates independently of the system whose system activity is being analysed.

C.4.4.2 Operations

C.4.4.2.1 Assignment

In FAU_SAA.3.1, the PP/ST author should identify a base subset of system events whose occurrence, in isolation from all other system activity, may indicate a violation of the enforcement of the SFRs. These include events that by themselves indicate a clear violation to the enforcement of the SFRs, or whose occurrence is so significant that they warrant actions.

In FAU_SAA.3.2, the PP/ST author should specify the information used to determine system activity. This information is the input data used by the analysis tool to determine the system activity that has occurred on the TOE. This data may include audit data, combinations of audit data with other system data, or may consist of data other than the audit data. The PP/ST author should define precisely what system events and event attributes are being monitored within the input data.

C.4.5 FAU_SAA.4 Complex attack heuristics

C.4.5.1 User application notes

In practice, it is at best rare when an analysis tool can detect with certainty when a security violation is imminent. However, there do exist some system events that are so significant they are always worthy of independent review. Example of such events include the deletion of a key TSF security data file (e.g. the password file) or activity such as a remote user attempting to gain administrative privilege. These events are referred to as signature events in that their occurrence in isolation from the rest of the system activity are indicative of intrusive activity. Event sequences are an ordered set of signature events that might indicate intrusive activity.

The complexity of a given tool will depend greatly on the assignments defined by the PP/ST author in identifying the base set of signature events and event sequences.

The PP/ST author should enumerate specifically what events should be monitored by the TSF in order to perform the analysis. The PP/ST author should identify specifically what information pertaining to the event is necessary to determine if the event maps to a signature event.

Administrative notification should be provided such that the authorised user understands the significance of the event and the appropriate possible responses.

An effort was made in the specification of these requirements to avoid a dependency on audit data as the sole input for monitoring system activity. This was done in recognition of the existence of previously developed intrusion detection tools that do not perform their analyses of system activity solely through the use of audit data (examples of other input data include network datagrams, resource/accounting data, or combinations of various system data). Levelling, therefore, requires the PP/ST author to specify the type of input data used to monitor system activity.

The elements of FAU_SAA.4 Complex attack heuristics do not require that the TSF implementing the complex attack heuristics be the same TSF whose activity is being monitored. Thus, one can develop an intrusion detection component that operates independently of the system whose system activity is being analysed.

C.4.5.2 Operations

C.4.5.2.1 Assignment

In FAU_SAA.4.1, the PP/ST author should identify a base set of list of sequences of system events whose occurrence are representative of known penetration scenarios. These event sequences represent known penetration scenarios. Each event represented in the sequence should map to a monitored system event, such that as the system events are performed, they are bound (mapped) to the known penetration event sequences.

In FAU_SAA.4.1, the PP/ST author should identify a base subset of system events whose occurrence, in isolation from all other system activity, may indicate a violation of the enforcement of the SFRs. These include events that by themselves indicate a clear violation to the SFRs, or whose occurrence is so significant they warrant action.

In FAU_SAA.4.2, the PP/ST author should specify the information used to determine system activity. This information is the input data used by the analysis tool to determine the system activity that has occurred on the TOE. This data may include audit data, combinations of audit data with other system data, or may consist of data other than the audit data. The PP/ST author should define precisely what system events and event attributes are being monitored within the input data.

C.5 Security audit review (FAU_SAR)

C.5.1 User notes

The Security audit review family defines requirements related to review of the audit information.

These functions should allow pre-storage or post-storage audit selection that includes, for example, the ability to selectively review:

- the actions of one or more users (e.g. identification, authentication, TOE entry, and access control actions);
- the actions performed on a specific object or TOE resource;
- all of a specified set of audited exceptions; or
- actions associated with a specific SFR attribute.

The distinction between audit reviews is based on functionality. Audit review (only) encompasses the ability to view audit data. Selectable review is more sophisticated, and requires the ability to select subsets of audit data based on a single criterion or multiple criteria with logical (i.e. and/or) relations, and order the audit data before it is reviewed.

C.5.2 FAU_SAR.1 Audit review

C.5.2.1 User application notes

This component will provide authorised users the capability to obtain and interpret the information. In case of human users this information needs to be in a human understandable presentation. In case of external IT entities the information needs to be unambiguously represented in an electronic fashion.

C.5.2.2 Operations

C.5.2.2.1 Assignment

In FAU_SAR.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify the authorised users that can use this capability. If appropriate the PP/ST author may include security roles (see FMT_SMR.1 Security roles).

In FAU_SAR.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify the type of information the specified user is permitted to obtain from the audit records. Examples are “all”, “subject identity”, “all information belonging to audit records referencing this user”. When employing the SFR, FAU_SAR.1, it is not necessary to repeat, in full detail, the list of audit information first specified in FAU_GEN.1. Use of terms such as “all” or “all audit information” assist in eliminating ambiguity and the further need for comparative analysis between the two security requirements.

C.5.3 FAU_SAR.2 Restricted audit review

C.5.3.1 User application notes

This component specifies that any users not identified in FAU_SAR.1 Audit review will not be able to read the audit records.

C.5.4 FAU_SAR.3 Selectable audit review

C.5.4.1 User application notes

This component is used to specify that it should be possible to perform selection of the audit data to be reviewed. If based on multiple criteria, those criteria should be related together with logical (i.e. “and” or “or”) relations, and the tools should provide the ability to manipulate audit data (e.g. sort, filter).

C.5.4.2 Operations

C.5.4.2.1 Assignment

In FAU_SAR.3.1, the PP/ST author should specify whether capabilities to select and/or order audit data is required from the TSF.

In FAU_SAR.3.1, the PP/ST author should assign the criteria, possibly with logical relations, to be used to select the audit data for review. The logical relations are intended to specify whether the operation can be on an individual attribute or a collection of attributes. An example of this assignment could be: "application, user account and/or location". In this case the operation could be specified using any combination of the three attributes: application, user account and location.

C.6 Security audit event selection (FAU_SEL)

C.6.1 User notes

The Security audit event selection family provides requirements related to the capabilities of identifying which of the possible auditable events are to be audited. The auditable events are defined in the Security audit data generation (FAU_GEN) family, but those events should be defined as being selectable in this component to be audited.

This family ensures that it is possible to keep the audit trail from becoming so large that it becomes useless, by defining the appropriate granularity of the selected security audit events.

C.6.2 FAU_SEL.1 Selective audit

C.6.2.1 User application notes

This component defines the selection criteria used, and the resulting audited subsets of the set of all auditable events, based on user attributes, subject attributes, object attributes, or event types.

The existence of individual user identities is not assumed for this component. This allows for TOEs such as routers that may not support the notion of users.

For a distributed environment, the host identity could be used as a selection criteria for events to be audited.

The management function FMT_MTD.1 Management of TSF data will handle the rights of authorised users to query or modify the selections.

C.6.2.2 Operations

C.6.2.2.1 Selection

In FAU_SEL.1.1, the PP/ST author should select whether the security attributes upon which audit selectivity is based, is related to object identity, user identity, subject identity, host identity, or event type.

C.6.2.2.2 Assignment

In FAU_SEL.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify any additional attributes upon which audit selectivity is based. If there are no additional rules upon which audit selectivity is based, this assignment can be completed with "none".

C.7 Security audit event storage (FAU_STG)

C.7.1 User notes

The Security audit event storage family describes requirements for storing audit data for later use, including requirements controlling the loss of audit information due to TOE failure, attack and/or exhaustion of storage space.

C.7.2 FAU_STG.1 Protected audit trail storage

C.7.2.1 User application notes

In a distributed environment, as the location of the audit trail is in the TSF, but not necessarily co-located with the function generating the audit data, the PP/ST author could request authentication of the originator of the audit record, or non-repudiation of the origin of the record prior storing this record in the audit trail.

The TSF will protect the stored audit records in the audit trail from unauthorised deletion and modification. It is noted that in some TOEs the auditor (role) might not be authorised to delete the audit records for a certain period of time.

C.7.2.2 Operations

C.7.2.2.1 Selection

In FAU_STG.1.2, the PP/ST author should specify whether the TSF shall prevent or only be able to detect modifications of the stored audit records in the audit trail. Only one of these options may be chosen.

C.7.3 FAU_STG.2 Guarantees of audit data availability

C.7.3.1 User application notes

This component allows the PP/ST author to specify to which metrics the audit trail should conform.

In a distributed environment, as the location of the audit trail is in the TSF, but not necessarily co-located with the function generating the audit data, the PP/ST author could request authentication of the originator of the audit record, or non-repudiation of the origin of the record prior storing this record in the audit trail.

C.7.3.2 Operations

C.7.3.2.1 Selection

In FAU_STG.2.2, the PP/ST author should specify whether the TSF shall prevent or only be able to detect modifications of the stored audit records in the audit trail. Only one of these options may be chosen.

C.7.3.2.2 Assignment

In FAU_STG.2.3, the PP/ST author should specify the metric that the TSF must ensure with respect to the stored audit records. This metric limits the data loss by enumerating the number of records that must be kept, or the time that records are guaranteed to be maintained. An example of the metric could be "100,000" indicating that 100,000 audit records can be stored.

C.7.3.2.3 Selection

In FAU_STG.2.3, the PP/ST author should specify the condition under which the TSF shall still be able to maintain a defined amount of audit data. This condition can be any of the following: audit storage exhaustion, failure, attack.

C.7.4 FAU_STG.3 Action in case of possible audit data loss

C.7.4.1 User application notes

This component requires that actions will be taken when the audit trail exceeds certain pre-defined limits.

C.7.4.2 Operations

C.7.4.2.1 Assignment

In FAU_STG.3.1, the PP/ST author should indicate the pre-defined limit. If the management functions indicate that this number might be changed by the authorised user, this value is the default value. The PP/ST author might choose to let the authorised user define this limit. In that case the assignment can be for example “an authorised user set limit”.

In FAU_STG.3.1, the PP/ST author should specify actions that should be taken in case of imminent audit storage failure indicated by exceeding the threshold. Actions might include informing an authorised user.

C.7.5 FAU_STG.4 Prevention of audit data loss

C.7.5.1 User application notes

This component specifies the behaviour of the TOE if the audit trail is full: either audit records are ignored, or the TOE is frozen such that no audited events can take place. The requirement also states that no matter how the requirement is instantiated, the authorised user with specific rights to this effect, can continue to generate audited events (actions). The reason is that otherwise the authorised user could not even reset the TOE. Consideration should be given to the choice of the action to be taken by the TSF in the case of audit storage exhaustion, as ignoring events, which provides better availability of the TOE, will also permit actions to be performed without being recorded and without the user being accountable.

C.7.5.2 Operations

C.7.5.2.1 Selection

In FAU_STG.4.1, the PP/ST author should select whether the TSF shall ignore audited actions, or whether it should prevent audited actions from happening, or whether the oldest audit records should be overwritten when the TSF can no longer store audit records. Only one of these options may be chosen.

C.7.5.2.2 Assignment

In FAU_STG.4.1, the PP/ST author should specify other actions that should be taken in case of audit storage failure, such as informing the authorised user. If there is no other action to be taken in case of audit storage failure, this assignment can be completed with “none”.

Annex D (normative)

Class FCO: Communication

This class describes requirements specifically of interest for TOEs that are used for the transport of information. Families within this class deal with non-repudiation.

In this class the concept of “information” is used. This information should be interpreted as the object being communicated, and could contain an electronic mail message, a file, or a set of predefined attribute types.

In the literature, the terms “proof of receipt” and “proof of origin” are commonly used terms. However it is recognised that the term “proof” might be interpreted in a legal sense to imply a form of mathematical rationale. The components in this class interpret the de-facto use of the word “proof” in the context of “evidence” that the TSF demonstrates the non-repudiated transport of types of information.

Figure D.1 shows the decomposition of this class into its constituent components.

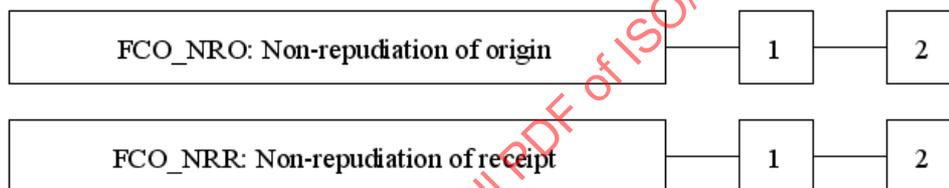


Figure D.1 - FCO: Communication class decomposition

D.1 Non-repudiation of origin (FCO_NRO)

D.1.1 User notes

Non-repudiation of origin defines requirements to provide evidence to users/subjects about the identity of the originator of some information. The originator cannot successfully deny having sent the information because evidence of origin (e.g. digital signature) provides evidence of the binding between the originator and the information sent. The recipient or a third party can verify the evidence of origin. This evidence should not be forgeable.

If the information or the associated attributes are altered in any way, validation of the evidence of origin might fail. Therefore a PP/ST author should consider including integrity requirements such as FDP_UIT.1 Data exchange integrity in the PP/ST.

In non-repudiation there are several different roles involved, each of which could be combined in one or more subjects. The first role is a subject that requests evidence of origin (only in FCO_NRO.1 Selective proof of origin). The second role is the recipient and/or other subjects to which the evidence is provided (e.g. a notary). The third role is a subject that requests verification of the evidence of origin, for example, a recipient or a third party such as an arbiter.

The PP/ST author must specify the conditions that must be met to be able to verify the validity of the evidence. An example of a condition which could be specified is where the verification of evidence must occur within 24 hours. These conditions, therefore, allow the tailoring of the non-repudiation to legal requirements, such as being able to provide evidence for several years.

In most cases, the identity of the recipient will be the identity of the user who received the transmission. In some instances, the PP/ST author does not want the user identity to be exported. In that case the PP/ST

author must consider whether it is appropriate to include this class, or whether the identity of the transport service provider or the identity of the host should be used.

In addition to (or instead of) the user identity, a PP/ST author might be more concerned about the time the information was transmitted. For example, requests for proposals must be transmitted before a certain date in order to be considered. In such instances, these requirements can be customised to provide a timestamp indication (time of origin).

D.1.2 FCO_NRO.1 Selective proof of origin

D.1.2.1 Operations

D.1.2.1.1 Assignment

In FCO_NRO.1.1, the PP/ST author should fill in the types of information subject to the evidence of origin function, for example, electronic mail messages.

D.1.2.1.2 Selection

In FCO_NRO.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify the user/subject who can request evidence of origin.

D.1.2.1.3 Assignment

In FCO_NRO.1.1, the PP/ST author, dependent on the selection, should specify the third parties that can request evidence of origin. A third party could be an arbiter, judge or legal body.

In FCO_NRO.1.2, the PP/ST author should fill in the list of the attributes that shall be linked to the information; for example, originator identity, time of origin, and location of origin.

In FCO_NRO.1.2, the PP/ST author should fill in the list of information fields within the information over which the attributes provide evidence of origin, such as the body of a message.

D.1.2.1.4 Selection

In FCO_NRO.1.3, the PP/ST author should specify the user/subject who can verify the evidence of origin.

D.1.2.1.5 Assignment

In FCO_NRO.1.3, the PP/ST author should fill in the list of limitations under which the evidence can be verified. For example the evidence can only be verified within a 24 hour time interval. An assignment of "immediate" or "indefinite" is acceptable.

In FCO_NRO.1.3, the PP/ST author, dependent on the selection, should specify the third parties that can verify the evidence of origin.

D.1.3 FCO_NRO.2 Enforced proof of origin

D.1.3.1 Operations

D.1.3.1.1 Assignment

In FCO_NRO.2.1, the PP/ST author should fill in the types of information subject to the evidence of origin function, for example, electronic mail messages.

In FCO_NRO.2.2, the PP/ST author should fill in the list of the attributes that shall be linked to the information; for example, originator identity, time of origin, and location of origin.

In FCO_NRO.2.2, the PP/ST author should fill in the list of information fields within the information over which the attributes provide evidence of origin, such as the body of a message.

D.1.3.1.2 Selection

In FCO_NRO.2.3, the PP/ST author should specify the user/subject who can verify the evidence of origin.

D.1.3.1.3 Assignment

In FCO_NRO.2.3, the PP/ST author should fill in the list of limitations under which the evidence can be verified. For example the evidence can only be verified within a 24 hour time interval. An assignment of "immediate" or "indefinite" is acceptable.

In FCO_NRO.2.3, the PP/ST author, dependent on the selection, should specify the third parties that can verify the evidence of origin. A third party could be an arbiter, judge or legal body.

D.2 Non-repudiation of receipt (FCO_NRR)**D.2.1 User notes**

Non-repudiation of receipt defines requirements to provide evidence to other users/subjects that the information was received by the recipient. The recipient cannot successfully deny having received the information because evidence of receipt (e.g. digital signature) provides evidence of the binding between the recipient attributes and the information. The originator or a third party can verify the evidence of receipt. This evidence should not be forgeable.

It should be noted that the provision of evidence that the information was received does not necessarily imply that the information was read or comprehended, but only delivered.

If the information or the associated attributes are altered in any way, validation of the evidence of receipt with respect to the original information might fail. Therefore a PP/ST author should consider including integrity requirements such as FDP_UIT.1 Data exchange integrity in the PP/ST.

In non-repudiation, there are several different roles involved, each of which could be combined in one or more subjects. The first role is a subject that requests evidence of receipt (only in FCO_NRR.1 Selective proof of receipt). The second role is the recipient and/or other subjects to which the evidence is provided, (e.g. a notary). The third role is a subject that requests verification of the evidence of receipt, for example, an originator or a third party such as an arbiter.

The PP/ST author must specify the conditions that must be met to be able to verify the validity of the evidence. An example of a condition which could be specified is where the verification of evidence must occur within 24 hours. These conditions, therefore, allow the tailoring of the non-repudiation to legal requirements, such as being able to provide evidence for several years.

In most cases, the identity of the recipient will be the identity of the user who received the transmission. In some instances, the PP/ST author does not want the user identity to be exported. In that case, the PP/ST author must consider whether it is appropriate to include this class, or whether the identity of the transport service provider or the identity of the host should be used.

In addition to (or instead of) the user identity, a PP/ST author might be more concerned about the time the information was received. For example, when an offer expires at a certain date, orders must be received before a certain date in order to be considered. In such instances, these requirements can be customised to provide a timestamp indication (time of receipt).

D.2.2 FCO_NRR.1 Selective proof of receipt**D.2.2.1 Operations****D.2.2.1.1 Assignment**

In FCO_NRR.1.1, the PP/ST author should fill in the types of information subject to the evidence of receipt function, for example, electronic mail messages.

D.2.2.1.2 Selection

In FCO_NRR.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify the user/subject who can request evidence of receipt.

D.2.2.1.3 Assignment

In FCO_NRR.1.1, the PP/ST author, dependent on the selection, should specify the third parties that can request evidence of receipt. A third party could be an arbiter, judge or legal body.

In FCO_NRR.1.2, the PP/ST author should fill in the list of the attributes that shall be linked to the information; for example, recipient identity, time of receipt, and location of receipt.

In FCO_NRR.1.2, the PP/ST author should fill in the list of information fields with the fields within the information over which the attributes provide evidence of receipt, such as the body a message.

D.2.2.1.4 Selection

In FCO_NRR.1.3, the PP/ST author should specify the user/subjects who can verify the evidence of receipt.

D.2.2.1.5 Assignment

In FCO_NRR.1.3, the PP/ST author should fill in the list of limitations under which the evidence can be verified. For example the evidence can only be verified within a 24 hour time interval. An assignment of "immediate" or "indefinite" is acceptable.

In FCO_NRR.1.3, the PP/ST author, dependent on the selection, should specify the third parties that can verify the evidence of receipt.

D.2.3 FCO_NRR.2 Enforced proof of receipt

D.2.3.1 Operations

D.2.3.1.1 Assignment

In FCO_NRR.2.1, the PP/ST author should fill in the types of information subject to the evidence of receipt function, for example electronic mail messages.

In FCO_NRR.2.2, the PP/ST author should fill in the list of the attributes that shall be linked to the information; for example, recipient identity, time of receipt, and location of receipt.

In FCO_NRR.2.2, the PP/ST author should fill in the list of information fields with the fields within the information over which the attributes provide evidence of receipt, such as the body of a message.

D.2.3.1.2 Selection

In FCO_NRR.2.3, the PP/ST author should specify the user/subjects who can verify the evidence of receipt.

D.2.3.1.3 Assignment

In FCO_NRR.2.3, the PP/ST author should fill in the list of limitations under which the evidence can be verified. For example the evidence can only be verified within a 24 hour time interval. An assignment of "immediate" or "indefinite" is acceptable.

In FCO_NRR.2.3, the PP/ST author, dependent on the selection, should specify the third parties that can verify the evidence of receipt. A third party could be an arbiter, judge or legal body.

Annex E (normative)

Class FCS: Cryptographic support

The TSF may employ cryptographic functionality to help satisfy several high-level security objectives. These include (but are not limited to): identification and authentication, non-repudiation, trusted path, trusted channel and data separation. This class is used when the TOE implements cryptographic functions, the implementation of which could be in hardware, firmware and/or software.

The FCS: Cryptographic support class is composed of two families: Cryptographic key management (FCS_CKM) and Cryptographic operation (FCS_COP). The Cryptographic key management (FCS_CKM) family addresses the management aspects of cryptographic keys, while the Cryptographic operation (FCS_COP) family is concerned with the operational use of those cryptographic keys.

For each cryptographic key generation method implemented by the TOE, if any, the PP/ST author should select the FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation component.

For each cryptographic key distribution method implemented by the TOE, if any, the PP/ST author should select the FCS_CKM.2 Cryptographic key distribution component.

For each cryptographic key access method implemented by the TOE, if any, the PP/ST author should select the FCS_CKM.3 Cryptographic key access component.

For each cryptographic key destruction method implemented by the TOE, if any, the PP/ST author should select the FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction component.

For each cryptographic operation (such as digital signature, data encryption, key agreement, secure hash, etc.) performed by the TOE, if any, the PP/ST author should select the FCS_COP.1 Cryptographic operation component.

Cryptographic functionality may be used to meet objectives specified in class FCO: Communication, and in families Data authentication (FDP_DAU), Stored data integrity (FDP_SDI), Inter-TSF user data confidentiality transfer protection (FDP_UCT), Inter-TSF user data integrity transfer protection (FDP_UIT), Specification of secrets (FIA_SOS), User authentication (FIA_UAU), to meet a variety of objectives. In the cases where cryptographic functionality is used to meet objectives for other classes, the individual functional components specify the objectives that cryptographic functionality must satisfy. The objectives in class FCS: Cryptographic support should be used when cryptographic functionality of the TOE is sought by consumers.

Figure E.1 shows the decomposition of this class into its constituent components.

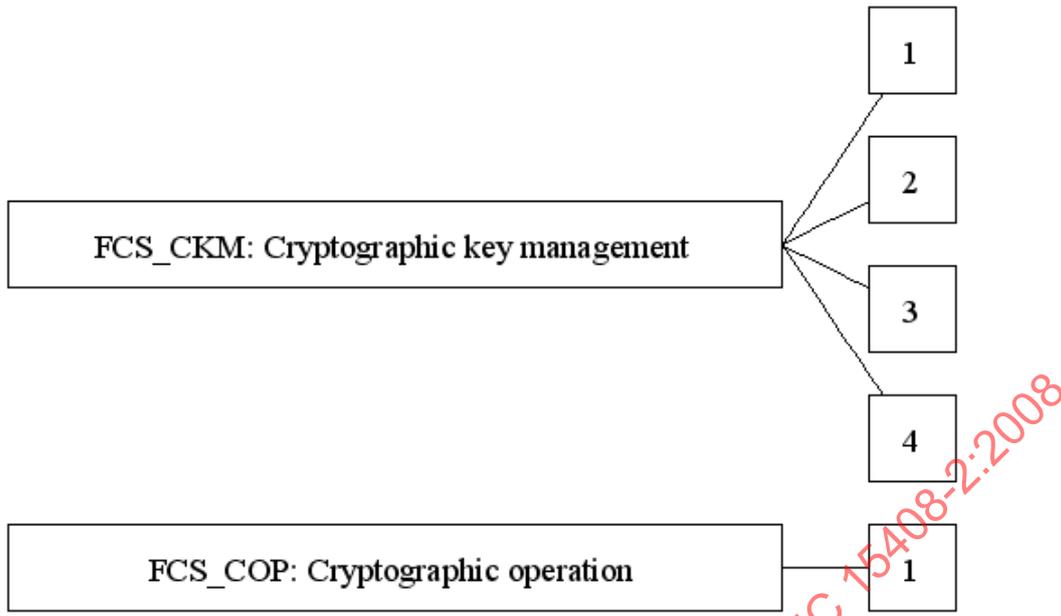


Figure E.1 - FCS: Cryptographic support class decomposition

E.1 Cryptographic key management (FCS_CKM)

E.1.1 User notes

Cryptographic keys must be managed throughout their lifetime. The typical events in the lifecycle of a cryptographic key include (but are not limited to): generation, distribution, entry, storage, access (e.g. backup, escrow, archive, recovery) and destruction.

The inclusion of other stages is dependent on the key management strategy being implemented, as the TOE need not be involved in all of the key life-cycle (e.g. the TOE may only generate and distribute cryptographic keys).

This family is intended to support the cryptographic key lifecycle and consequently defines requirements for the following activities: cryptographic key generation, cryptographic key distribution, cryptographic key access and cryptographic key destruction. This family should be included whenever there are functional requirements for the management of cryptographic keys.

If Security audit data generation (FAU_GEN) Security Audit Data Generation is included in the PP/ST then, in the context of the events being audited:

- a) The object attributes may include the assigned user for the cryptographic key, the user role, the cryptographic operation that the cryptographic key is to be used for, the cryptographic key identifier and the cryptographic key validity period.
- b) The object value may include the values of cryptographic key(s) and parameters excluding any sensitive information (such as secret or private cryptographic keys).

Typically, random numbers are used to generate cryptographic keys. If this is the case, then FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation should be used instead of the component FIA_SOS.2 TSF Generation of secrets. In cases where random number generation is required for purposes other than for the generation of cryptographic keys, the component FIA_SOS.2 TSF Generation of secrets should be used.

E.1.2 FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation

E.1.2.1 User application notes

This component requires the cryptographic key sizes and method used to generate cryptographic keys to be specified, this can be in accordance with an assigned standard. It should be used to specify the cryptographic key sizes and the method (e.g. algorithm) used to generate the cryptographic keys. Only one instance of the component is needed for the same method and multiple key sizes. The key size could be common or different for the various entities, and could be either the input to or the output from the method.

E.1.2.2 Operations

E.1.2.2.1 Assignment

In FCS_CKM.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify the cryptographic key generation algorithm to be used.

In FCS_CKM.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify the cryptographic key sizes to be used. The key sizes specified should be appropriate for the algorithm and its intended use.

In FCS_CKM.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify the assigned standard that documents the method used to generate cryptographic keys. The assigned standard may comprise none, one or more actual standards publications, for example, from international, national, industry or organisational standards.

E.1.3 FCS_CKM.2 Cryptographic key distribution

E.1.3.1 User application notes

This component requires the method used to distribute cryptographic keys to be specified, this can be in accordance with an assigned standard.

E.1.3.2 Operations

E.1.3.2.1 Assignment

In FCS_CKM.2.1, the PP/ST author should specify the cryptographic key distribution method to be used.

In FCS_CKM.2.1, the PP/ST author should specify the assigned standard that documents the method used to distribute cryptographic keys. The assigned standard may comprise none, one or more actual standards publications, for example, from international, national, industry or organisational standards.

E.1.4 FCS_CKM.3 Cryptographic key access

E.1.4.1 User application notes

This component requires the method used to access cryptographic keys be specified, this can be in accordance with an assigned standard.

E.1.4.2 Operations

E.1.4.2.1 Assignment

In FCS_CKM.3.1, the PP/ST author should specify the type of cryptographic key access being used. Examples of types of cryptographic key access include (but are not limited to) cryptographic key backup, cryptographic key archival, cryptographic key escrow and cryptographic key recovery.

In FCS_CKM.3.1, the PP/ST author should specify the cryptographic key access method to be used.

In FCS_CKM.3.1, the PP/ST author should specify the assigned standard that documents the method used to access cryptographic keys. The assigned standard may comprise none, one or more actual standards publications, for example, from international, national, industry or organisational standards.

E.1.5 FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction

E.1.5.1 User application notes

This component requires the method used to destroy cryptographic keys be specified, this can be in accordance with an assigned standard.

E.1.5.2 Operations

E.1.5.2.1 Assignment

In FCS_CKM.4.1, the PP/ST author should specify the key destruction method to be used to destroy cryptographic keys.

In FCS_CKM.4.1, the PP/ST author should specify the assigned standard that documents the method used to destroy cryptographic keys. The assigned standard may comprise none, one or more actual standards publications, for example, from international, national, industry or organisational standards.

E.2 Cryptographic operation (FCS_COP)

E.2.1 User notes

A cryptographic operation may have cryptographic mode(s) of operation associated with it. If this is the case, then the cryptographic mode(s) must be specified. Examples of cryptographic modes of operation are cipher block chaining, output feedback mode, electronic code book mode, and cipher feedback mode.

Cryptographic operations may be used to support one or more TOE security services. The Cryptographic operation (FCS_COP) component may need to be iterated more than once depending on:

- a) the user application for which the security service is being used,
- b) the use of different cryptographic algorithms and/or cryptographic key sizes,
- c) the type or sensitivity of the data being operated on.

If Security audit data generation (FAU_GEN) Security audit data generation is included in the PP/ST then, in the context of the cryptographic operation events being audited:

- a) The types of cryptographic operation may include digital signature generation and/or verification, cryptographic checksum generation for integrity and/or for verification of checksum, secure hash (message digest) computation, data encryption and/or decryption, cryptographic key encryption and/or decryption, cryptographic key agreement and random number generation.
- b) The subject attributes may include subject role(s) and user(s) associated with the subject.
- c) The object attributes may include the assigned user for the cryptographic key, user role, cryptographic operation the cryptographic key is to be used for, cryptographic key identifier, and the cryptographic key validity period.

E.2.2 FCS_COP.1 Cryptographic operation

E.2.2.1 User application notes

This component requires the cryptographic algorithm and key size used to perform specified cryptographic operation(s) which can be based on an assigned standard.

E.2.2.2 Operations

E.2.2.2.1 Assignment

In FCS_COP.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify the cryptographic operations being performed. Typical cryptographic operations include digital signature generation and/or verification, cryptographic checksum generation for integrity and/or for verification of checksum, secure hash (message digest) computation, data encryption and/or decryption, cryptographic key encryption and/or decryption, cryptographic key agreement and random number generation. The cryptographic operation may be performed on user data or TSF data.

In FCS_COP.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify the cryptographic algorithm to be used. Typical cryptographic algorithms include, but are not limited to, DES, RSA and IDEA.

In FCS_COP.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify the cryptographic key sizes to be used. The key sizes specified should be appropriate for the algorithm and its intended use.

In FCS_COP.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify the assigned standard that documents how the identified cryptographic operation(s) are performed. The assigned standard may comprise none, one or more actual standards publications, for example, from international, national, industry or organisational standards.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of ISO/IEC 15408-2:2008

Annex F (normative)

Class FDP: User data protection

This class contains families specifying requirements related to protecting user data. This class differs from FIA and FPT in that FDP: User data protection specifies components to protect user data, FIA specifies components to protect attributes associated with the user, and FPT specifies components to protect TSF information.

The class does not contain explicit requirements for traditional Mandatory Access Controls (MAC) or traditional Discretionary Access Controls (DAC); however, such requirements may be constructed using components from this class.

FDP: User data protection does not explicitly deal with confidentiality, integrity, or availability, as all three are most often intertwined in the policy and mechanisms. However, the TOE security policy must adequately cover these three objectives in the PP/ST.

A final aspect of this class is that it specifies access control in terms of "operations". An operation is defined as a specific type of access on a specific object. It depends on the level of abstraction of the PP/ST author whether these operations are described as "read" and/or "write" operations, or as more complex operations such as "update the database".

The access control policies are policies that control access to the information container. The attributes represent attributes of the container. Once the information is out of the container, the accessor is free to modify that information, including writing the information into a different container with different attributes. By contrast, an information flow policies controls access to the information, independent of the container. The attributes of the information, which may be associated with the attributes of the container (or may not, as in the case of a multi-level database) stay with the information as it moves. The accessor does not have the ability, in the absence of an explicit authorisation, to change the attributes of the information.

This class is not meant to be a complete taxonomy of IT access policies, as others can be imagined. Those policies included here are simply those for which current experience with actual systems provides a basis for specifying requirements. There may be other forms of intent that are not captured in the definitions here.

For example, one could imagine a goal of having user-imposed (and user-defined) controls on information flow (e.g. an automated implementation of the NO FOREIGN handling caveat). Such concepts could be handled as refinements of, or extensions to the FDP: User data protection components.

Finally, it is important when looking at the components in FDP: User data protection to remember that these components are requirements for functions that may be implemented by a mechanism that also serves or could serve another purpose. For example, it is possible to build an access control policy (Access control policy (FDP_ACC)) that uses labels (FDP_1FF.1 Simple security attributes) as the basis of the access control mechanism.

A set of SFRs may encompass many security function policies (SFPs), each to be identified by the two policy oriented components Access control policy (FDP_ACC), and Information flow control policy (FDP_IFC). These policies will typically take confidentiality, integrity, and availability aspects into consideration as required, to satisfy the TOE requirements. Care should be taken to ensure that all objects are covered by at least one SFP and that there are no conflicts arising from implementing the multiple SFPs.

When building a PP/ST using components from the FDP: User data protection class, the following information provides guidance on where to look and what to select from the class.

The requirements in the FDP: User data protection class are defined in terms of a set of SFRs that will implement a SFP. Since a TOE may implement multiple SFPs simultaneously, the PP/ST author must specify

the name for each SFP, so it can be referenced in other families. This name will then be used in each component selected to indicate that it is being used as part of the definition of requirements for that SFP. This allows the author to easily indicate the scope for operations such as objects covered, operations covered, authorised users, etc.

Each instantiation of a component can apply to only one SFP. Therefore if an SFP is specified in a component then this SFP will apply to all the elements in this component. The components may be instantiated multiple times within a PP/ST to account for different policies if so desired.

The key to selecting components from this family is to have a well defined set of TOE security objectives to enable proper selection of the components from the two policy components; Access control policy (FDP_ACC) and Information flow control policy (FDP_IFC). In Access control policy (FDP_ACC) and Information flow control policy (FDP_IFC) respectively, all access control policies and all information flow control policies are named. Furthermore the scope of control of these components in terms of the subjects, objects and operations covered by this security functionality. The names of these policies are meant to be used throughout the remainder of the functional components that have an operation that calls for an assignment or selection of an "access control SFP" or an "information flow control SFP". The rules that define the functionality of the named access control and information flow control SFPs will be defined in the Access control functions (FDP_ACF) and Information flow control functions (FDP_IFT) families (respectively).

The following steps are guidance on how this class is applied in the construction of a PP/ST:

- a) Identify the policies to be enforced from the Access control policy (FDP_ACC), and Information flow control policy (FDP_IFC) families. These families define scope of control for the policy, granularity of control and may identify some rules to go with the policy.
- b) Identify the components and perform any applicable operations in the policy components. The assignment operations may be performed generally (such as with a statement "All files") or specifically ("The files "A", "B", etc.) depending upon the level of detail known.
- c) Identify any applicable function components from the Access control functions (FDP_ACF) and Information flow control functions (FDP_IFT) families to address the named policy families from Access control policy (FDP_ACC) and Information flow control policy (FDP_IFC). Perform the operations to make the components define the rules to be enforced by the named policies. This should make the components fit the requirements of the selected function envisioned or to be built.
- d) Identify who will have the ability to control and change security attributes under the function, such as only a security administrator, only the owner of the object, etc. Select the appropriate components from FMT: Security management and perform the operations. Refinements may be useful here to identify missing features, such as that some or all changes must be done via trusted path.
- e) Identify any appropriate components from the FMT: Security management for initial values for new objects and subjects.
- f) Identify any applicable rollback components from the Rollback (FDP_ROL) family.
- g) Identify any applicable residual information protection requirements from the Residual information protection (FDP_RIP) family.
- h) Identify any applicable import or export components, and how security attributes should be handled during import and export, from the Import from outside of the TOE (FDP_ITC) and Export from the TOE (FDP_ETC) families.
- i) Identify any applicable internal TOE communication components from the Internal TOE transfer (FDP_ITT) family.
- j) Identify any requirements for integrity protection of stored information from the Stored data integrity (FDP_SDI).

k) Identify any applicable inter-TSF communication components from the Inter-TSF user data confidentiality transfer protection (FDP_UCT) or Inter-TSF user data integrity transfer protection (FDP_UIT) families.

Figure F.1 shows the decomposition of this class into its constituent components.

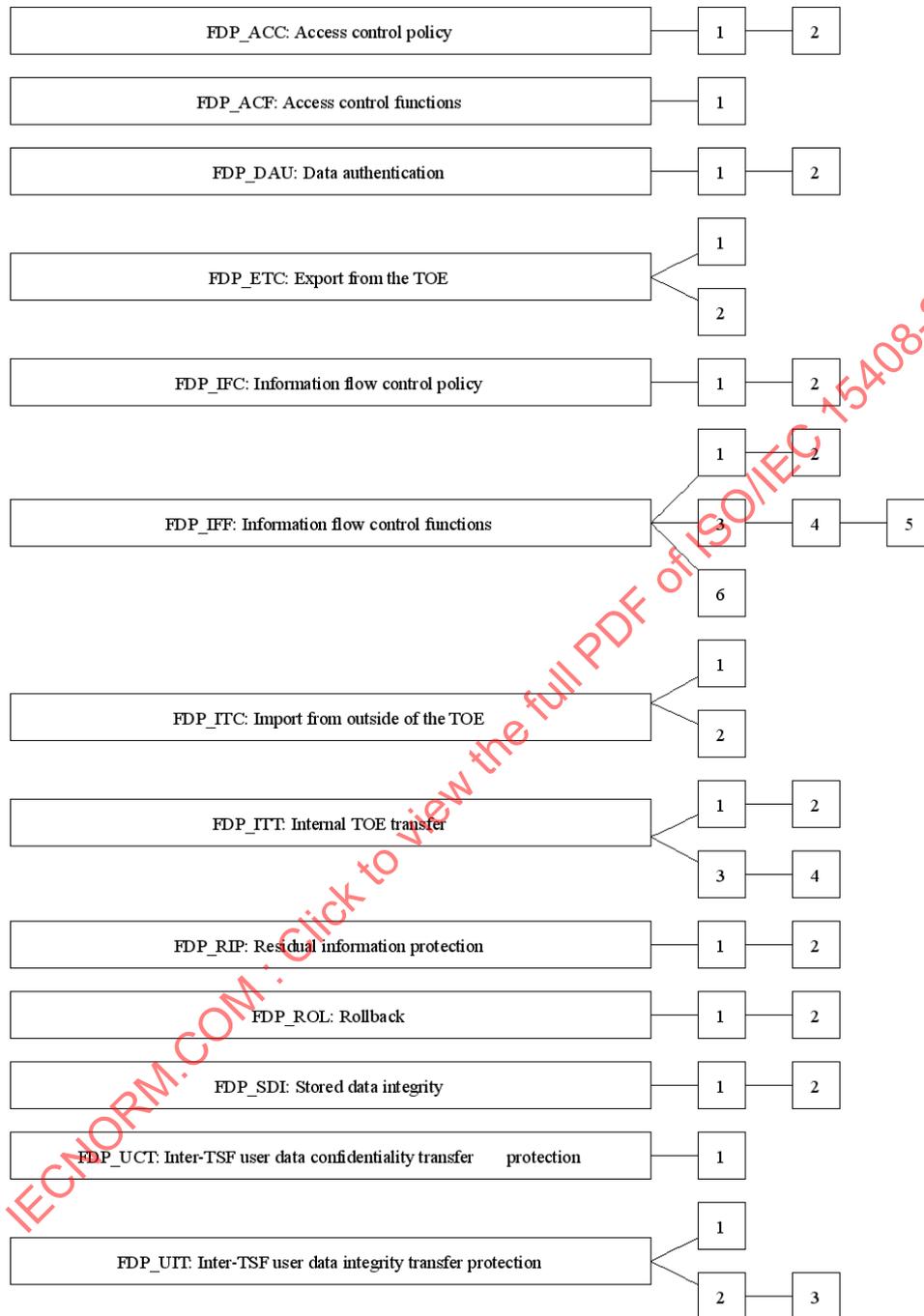


Figure F.1 - FDP: User data protection class decomposition

F.1 Access control policy (FDP_ACC)

F.1.1 User notes

This family is based upon the concept of arbitrary controls on the interaction of subjects and objects. The scope and purpose of the controls is based upon the attributes of the accessor (subject), the attributes of the container being accessed (object), the actions (operations) and any associated access control rules.

The components in this family are capable of identifying the access control SFPs (by name) to be enforced by the traditional Discretionary Access Control (DAC) mechanisms. It further defines the subjects, objects and operations that are covered by identified access control SFPs. The rules that define the functionality of an access control SFP will be defined by other families, such as Access control functions (FDP_ACF) and Export from the TOE (FDP_ETC). The names of the access control SFPs defined in Access control policy (FDP_ACC) are meant to be used throughout the remainder of the functional components that have an operation that calls for an assignment or selection of an "access control SFP."

The access control SFP covers a set of triplets: subject, object, and operations. Therefore a subject can be covered by multiple access control SFPs but only with respect to a different operation or a different object. Of course the same applies to objects and operations.

A critical aspect of an access control function that enforces an access control SFP is the ability for users to modify the attributes involved in access control decisions. The Access control policy (FDP_ACC) family does not address these aspects. Some of these requirements are left undefined, but can be added as refinements, while others are covered elsewhere in other families and classes such as FMT: Security management.

There are no audit requirements in Access control policy (FDP_ACC) as this family specifies access control SFP requirements. Audit requirements will be found in families specifying functions to satisfy the access control SFPs identified in this family.

This family provides a PP/ST author the capability to specify several policies, for example, a fixed access control SFP to be applied to one scope of control, and a flexible access control SFP to be defined for a different scope of control. To specify more than one access control policy, the components from this family can be iterated multiple times in a PP/ST to different subsets of operations and objects. This will accommodate TOEs that contain multiple policies, each addressing a particular set of operations and objects. In other words, the PP/ST author should specify the required information in the ACC component for each of the access control SFPs that the TSF will enforce. For example, a TOE incorporating three access control SFPs, each covering only a subset of the objects, subjects, and operations within the TOE, will contain one FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control component for each of the three access control SFPs, necessitating a total of three FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control components.

F.1.2 FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control

F.1.2.1 User application notes

The terms object and subject refer to generic elements in the TOE. For a policy to be implementable, the entities must be clearly identified. For a PP, the objects and operations might be expressed as types such as: named objects, data repositories, observe accesses, etc. For a specific TOE these generic terms (subject, object) must be refined, e.g. files, registers, ports, daemons, open calls, etc.

This component specifies that the policy cover some well-defined set of operations on some subset of the objects. It places no constraints on any operations outside the set - including operations on objects for which other operations are controlled.

F.1.2.2 Operations

F.1.2.2.1 Assignment

In FDP_ACC.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify a uniquely named access control SFP to be enforced by the TSF.

In FDP_ACC.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify the list of subjects, objects, and operations among subjects and objects covered by the SFP.

F.1.3 FDP_ACC.2 Complete access control

F.1.3.1 User application notes

This component requires that all possible operations on objects, that are included in the SFP, are covered by an access control SFP.

The PP/ST author must demonstrate that each combination of objects and subjects is covered by an access control SFP.

F.1.3.2 Operations

F.1.3.2.1 Assignment

In FDP_ACC.2.1, the PP/ST author should specify a uniquely named access control SFP to be enforced by the TSF.

In FDP_ACC.2.1, the PP/ST author should specify the list of subjects and objects covered by the SFP. All operations among those subjects and objects will be covered by the SFP.

F.2 Access control functions (FDP_ACF)

F.2.1 User notes

This family describes the rules for the specific functions that can implement an access control policy named in Access control policy (FDP_ACC) which also specifies the scope of control of the policy.

This family provides a PP/ST author the capability to describe the rules for access control. This results in a TOE where the access to objects will not change. An example of such an object is "Message of the Day", which is readable by all, and changeable only by the authorised administrator. This family also provides the PP/ST author with the ability to describe rules that provide for exceptions to the general access control rules. Such exceptions would either explicitly allow or deny authorisation to access an object.

There are no explicit components to specify other possible functions such as two-person control, sequence rules for operations, or exclusion controls. However, these mechanisms, as well as traditional DAC mechanisms, can be represented with the existing components, by careful drafting of the access control rules.

A variety of acceptable access control functionality may be specified in this family such as:

- Access control lists (ACLs)
- Time-based access control specifications
- Origin-based access control specifications
- Owner-controlled access control attributes

F.2.2 FDP_ACF.1 Security attribute based access control

F.2.2.1 User application notes

This component provides requirements for a mechanism that mediates access control based on security attributes associated with subjects and objects. Each object and subject has a set of associated attributes, such as location, time of creation, access rights (e.g., Access Control Lists (ACLs)). This component allows

the PP/ST author to specify the attributes that will be used for the access control mediation. This component allows access control rules, using these attributes, to be specified.

Examples of the attributes that a PP/ST author might assign are presented in the following paragraphs.

An identity attribute may be associated with users, subjects, or objects to be used for mediation. Examples of such attributes might be the name of the program image used in the creation of the subject, or a security attribute assigned to the program image.

A time attribute can be used to specify that access will be authorised during certain times of the day, during certain days of the week, or during a certain calendar year.

A location attribute could specify whether the location is the location of the request for the operation, the location where the operation will be carried out, or both. It could be based upon internal tables to translate the logical interfaces of the TSF into locations such as through terminal locations, CPU locations, etc.

A grouping attribute allows a single group of users to be associated with an operation for the purposes of access control. If required, the refinement operation should be used to specify the maximum number of definable groups, the maximum membership of a group, and the maximum number of groups to which a user can concurrently be associated.

This component also provides requirements for the access control security functions to be able to explicitly authorise or deny access to an object based upon security attributes. This could be used to provide privilege, access rights, or access authorisations within the TOE. Such privileges, rights, or authorisations could apply to users, subjects (representing users or applications), and objects.

F.2.2.2 Operations

F.2.2.2.1 Assignment

In FDP_ACF.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify an access control SFP name that the TSF is to enforce. The name of the access control SFP, and the scope of control for that policy are defined in components from Access control policy (FDP_ACC).

In FDP_ACF.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify, for each controlled subject and object, the security attributes and/or named groups of security attributes that the function will use in the specification of the rules. For example, such attributes may be things such as the user identity, subject identity, role, time of day, location, ACLs, or any other attribute specified by the PP/ST author. Named groups of security attributes can be specified to provide a convenient means to refer to multiple security attributes. Named groups could provide a useful way to associate "roles" defined in Security management roles (FMT_SMR), and all of their relevant attributes, with subjects. In other words, each role could relate to a named group of attributes.

In FDP_ACF.1.2, the PP/ST author should specify the SFP rules governing access among controlled subjects and controlled objects using controlled operations on controlled objects. These rules specify when access is granted or denied. It can specify general access control functions (e.g. typical permission bits) or granular access control functions (e.g. ACLs).

In FDP_ACF.1.3, the PP/ST author should specify the rules, based on security attributes, that explicitly authorise access of subjects to objects that will be used to explicitly authorise access. These rules are in addition to those specified in FDP_ACF.1.1. They are included in FDP_ACF.1.3 as they are intended to contain exceptions to the rules in FDP_ACF.1.1. An example of rules to explicitly authorise access is based on a privilege vector associated with a subject that always grants access to objects covered by the access control SFP that has been specified. If such a capability is not desired, then the PP/ST author should specify "none".

In FDP_ACF.1.4, the PP/ST author should specify the rules, based on security attributes, that explicitly deny access of subjects to objects. These rules are in addition to those specified in FDP_ACF.1.1. They are included in FDP_ACF.1.4 as they are intended to contain exceptions to the rules in FDP_ACF.1.1. An example of rules to explicitly deny access is based on a privilege vector associated with a subject that always

denies access to objects covered by the access control SFP that has been specified. If such a capability is not desired, then the PP/ST author should specify "none".

F.3 Data authentication (FDP_DAU)

F.3.1 User notes

This family describes specific functions that can be used to authenticate "static" data.

Components in this family are to be used when there is a requirement for "static" data authentication, i.e. where data is to be signed but not transmitted. (Note that the Non-repudiation of origin (FCO_NRO) family provides for non-repudiation of origin of information received during a data exchange.)

F.3.2 FDP_DAU.1 Basic Data Authentication

F.3.2.1 User application notes

This component may be satisfied by one-way hash functions (cryptographic checksum, fingerprint, message digest), to generate a hash value for a definitive document that may be used as verification of the validity or authenticity of its information content.

F.3.2.2 Operations

F.3.2.2.1 Assignment

In FDP_DAU.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify the list of objects or information types for which the TSF shall be capable of generating data authentication evidence.

In FDP_DAU.1.2, the PP/ST author should specify the list of subjects that will have the ability to verify data authentication evidence for the objects identified in the previous element. The list of subjects could be very specific, if the subjects are known, or it could be more generic and refer to a "type" of subject such as an identified role.

F.3.3 FDP_DAU.2 Data Authentication with Identity of Guarantor

F.3.3.1 User application notes

This component additionally requires the ability to verify the identity of the user that provided the guarantee of authenticity (e.g. a trusted third party).

F.3.3.2 Operations

F.3.3.2.1 Assignment

In FDP_DAU.2.1, the PP/ST author should specify the list of objects or information types for which the TSF shall be capable of generating data authentication evidence.

In FDP_DAU.2.2, the PP/ST author should specify the list of subjects that will have the ability to verify data authentication evidence for the objects identified in the previous element as well as the identity of the user that created the data authentication evidence.

F.4 Export from the TOE (FDP_ETC)

F.4.1 User notes

This family defines functions for TSF-mediated exporting of user data from the TOE such that its security attributes either can be explicitly preserved or can be ignored once it has been exported. Consistency of these security attributes are addressed by Inter-TSF TSF data consistency (FPT_TDC).

Export from the TOE (FDP_ETC) is concerned with limitations on export and association of security attributes with the exported user data.

This family, and the corresponding Import family Import from outside of the TOE (FDP_ITC), address how the TOE deals with user data transferred into and outside its control. In principle this family is concerned with the TSF-mediated exporting of user data and its related security attributes.

A variety of activities might be involved here:

- a) exporting of user data without any security attributes;
- b) exporting user data including security attributes where the two are associated with one another and the security attributes unambiguously represent the exported user data.

If there are multiple SFPs (access control and/or information flow control) then it may be appropriate to iterate these components once for each named SFP.

F.4.2 FDP_ETC.1 Export of user data without security attributes

F.4.2.1 User application notes

This component is used to specify the TSF-mediated exporting of user data without the export of its security attributes.

F.4.2.2 Operations

F.4.2.2.1 Assignment

In FDP_ETC.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify the access control SFP(s) and/or information flow control SFP(s) that will be enforced when exporting user data. The user data that this function exports is scoped by the assignment of these SFPs.

F.4.3 FDP_ETC.2 Export of user data with security attributes

F.4.3.1 User application notes

The user data is exported together with its security attributes. The security attributes are unambiguously associated with the user data. There are several ways of achieving this association. One way that this can be achieved is by physically collocating the user data and the security attributes (e.g. the same floppy), or by using cryptographic techniques such as secure signatures to associate the attributes and the user data. Inter-TSF trusted channel (FTP_ITC) could be used to assure that the attributes are correctly received at the other trusted IT product while Inter-TSF TSF data consistency (FPT_TDC) can be used to make sure that those attributes are properly interpreted. Furthermore, Trusted path (FTP_TRP) could be used to make sure that the export is being initiated by the proper user.

F.4.3.2 Operations

F.4.3.2.1 Assignment

In FDP_ETC.2.1, the PP/ST author should specify the access control SFP(s) and/or information flow control SFP(s) that will be enforced when exporting user data. The user data that this function exports is scoped by the assignment of these SFPs.

In FDP_ETC.2.4, the PP/ST author should specify any additional exportation control rules or "none" if there are no additional exportation control rules. These rules will be enforced by the TSF in addition to the access control SFPs and/or information flow control SFPs selected in FDP_ETC.2.1.

F.5 Information flow control policy (FDP_IFC)

F.5.1 User notes

This family covers the identification of information flow control SFPs; and, for each, specifies the scope of control of the SFP.

The components in this family are capable of identifying the information flow control SFPs to be enforced by the traditional Mandatory Access Control mechanisms that would be found in a TOE. However, they go beyond just the traditional MAC mechanisms and can be used to identify and describe non-interference policies and state-transitions. It further defines the subjects under control of the policy, the information under control of the policy, and operations which cause controlled information to flow to and from controlled subjects for each information flow control SFP in the TOE. The information flow control SFP will be defined by other families such as Information flow control functions (FDP_IFF) and Export from the TOE (FDP_ETC). The information flow control SFPs named here in Information flow control policy (FDP_IFC) are meant to be used throughout the remainder of the functional components that have an operation that calls for an assignment or selection of an "information flow control SFP."

These components are quite flexible. They allow the domain of flow control to be specified and there is no requirement that the mechanism be based upon labels. The different elements of the information flow control components also permit different degrees of exception to the policy.

Each SFP covers a set of triplets: subject, information, and operations that cause information to flow to and from subjects. Some information flow control policies may be at a very low level of detail and explicitly describe subjects in terms of processes within an operating system. Other information flow control policies may be at a high level and describe subjects in the generic sense of users or input/output channels. If the information flow control policy is at too high a level of detail, it may not clearly define the desired IT security functions. In such cases, it is more appropriate to include such descriptions of information flow control policies as objectives. Then the desired IT security functions can be specified as supportive of those objectives.

In the second component (FDP_IFC.2 Complete information flow control), each information flow control SFP will cover all possible operations that cause information covered by that SFP to flow to and from subjects covered by that SFP. Furthermore, all information flows will need to be covered by a SFP. Therefore for each action that causes information to flow, there will be a set of rules that define whether the action is allowed. If there are multiple SFPs that are applicable for a given information flow, all involved SFPs must allow this flow before it is permitted to take place.

An information flow control SFP covers a well-defined set of operations. The SFPs coverage may be "complete" with respect to some information flows, or it may address only some of the operations that affect the information flow.

An access control SFP controls access to the objects that contain information. An information flow control SFP controls access to the information, independent of its container. The attributes of the information, which may be associated with the attributes of the container (or may not, as in the case of a multi-level database) stay with the information as it flows. The accessor does not have the ability, in the absence of an explicit authorisation, to change the attributes of the information.

Information flows and operations can be expressed at multiple levels. In the case of a ST, the information flows and operations might be specified at a system-specific level: TCP/IP packets flowing through a firewall based upon known IP addresses. For a PP, the information flows and operations might be expressed as types: email, data repositories, observe accesses, etc.

The components in this family can be applied multiple times in a PP/ST to different subsets of operations and objects. This will accommodate TOEs that contain multiple policies, each addressing a particular set of objects, subjects, and operations.

F.5.2 FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control

F.5.2.1 User application notes

This component requires that an information flow control policy apply to a subset of the possible operations in the TOE.

F.5.2.2 Operations

F.5.2.2.1 Assignment

In FDP_IFC.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify a uniquely named information flow control SFP to be enforced by the TSF.

In FDP_IFC.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify the list of subjects, information, and operations which cause controlled information to flow to and from controlled subjects covered by the SFP. As mentioned above, the list of subjects could be at various levels of detail depending on the needs of the PP/ST author. It could specify users, machines, or processes for example. Information could refer to data such as email or network protocols, or more specific objects similar to those specified under an access control policy. If the information that is specified is contained within an object that is subject to an access control policy, then both the access control policy and information flow control policy must be enforced before the specified information could flow to or from the object.

F.5.3 FDP_IFC.2 Complete information flow control

F.5.3.1 User application notes

This component requires that all possible operations that cause information to flow to and from subjects included in the SFP, are covered by an information flow control SFP.

The PP/ST author must demonstrate that each combination of information flows and subjects is covered by an information flow control SFP.

F.5.3.2 Operations

F.5.3.2.1 Assignment

In FDP_IFC.2.1, the PP/ST author should specify a uniquely named information flow control SFP to be enforced by the TSF.

In FDP_IFC.2.1, the PP/ST author should specify the list of subjects and information that will be covered by the SFP. All operations that cause that information to flow to and from subjects will be covered by the SFP. As mentioned above, the list of subjects could be at various levels of detail depending on the needs of the PP/ST author. It could specify users, machines, or processes for example. Information could refer to data such as email or network protocols, or more specific objects similar to those specified under an access control policy. If the information that is specified is contained within an object that is subject to an access control policy, then both the access control policy and information flow control policy must be enforced before the specified information could flow to or from the object.

F.6 Information flow control functions (FDP_IFF)

F.6.1 User notes

This family describes the rules for the specific functions that can implement the information flow control SFPs named in Information flow control policy (FDP_IFC), which also specifies the scope of control of the policies. It consists of two "trees:" one addressing the common information flow control function issues, and a second addressing illicit information flows (i.e. covert channels) with respect to one or more information flow control SFPs. This division arises because the issues concerning illicit information flows are, in some sense,

orthogonal to the rest of an SFP. Illicit information flows are flows in violation of policy; thus they are not a policy issue.

In order to implement strong protection against disclosure or modification in the face of untrusted software, controls on information flow are required. Access controls alone are not sufficient because they only control access to containers, allowing the information they contain to flow, without controls, throughout a system.

In this family, the phrase “types of illicit information flows” is used. This phrase may be used to refer to the categorisation of flows as “Storage Channels” or “Timing Channels”, or it can refer to improved categorisations reflective of the needs of a PP/ST author.

The flexibility of these components allows the definition of a privilege policy within FDP_IFF.1 Simple security attributes and FDP_IFF.2 Hierarchical security attributes to allow the controlled bypass of all or part of a particular SFP. If there is a need for a predefined approach to SFP bypass, the PP/ST author should consider incorporating a privilege policy.

F.6.2 FDP_IFF.1 Simple security attributes

F.6.2.1 User application notes

This component requires security attributes on information, and on subjects that cause that information to flow and subjects that act as recipients of that information. The attributes of the containers of the information should also be considered if it is desired that they should play a part in information flow control decisions or if they are covered by an access control policy. This component specifies the key rules that are enforced, and describes how security attributes are derived.

This component does not specify the details of how a security attribute is assigned (i.e. user versus process). Flexibility in policy is provided by having assignments that allow specification of additional policy and function requirements, as necessary.

This component also provides requirements for the information flow control functions to be able to explicitly authorise and deny an information flow based upon security attributes. This could be used to implement a privilege policy that covers exceptions to the basic policy defined in this component.

F.6.2.2 Operations

F.6.2.2.1 Assignment

In FDP_IFF.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify the information flow control SFPs enforced by the TSF. The name of the information flow control SFP, and the scope of control for that policy are defined in components from Information flow control policy (FDP_IFC).

In FDP_IFF.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify, for each type of controlled subject and information, the security attributes that are relevant to the specification of the SFP rules. For example, such security attributes may be things such the subject identifier, subject sensitivity label, subject clearance label, information sensitivity label, etc. The types of security attributes should be sufficient to support the environmental needs.

In FDP_IFF.1.2, the PP/ST author should specify for each operation, the security attribute-based relationship that must hold between subject and information security attributes that the TSF will enforce.

In FDP_IFF.1.3, the PP/ST author should specify any additional information flow control SFP rules that the TSF is to enforce. This includes all rules of the SFP that are either not based on the security attributes of the information and the subject or rules that automatically modify the security attributes of information or subjects as a result of an access operation. An example for the first case is a rule of the SFP controlling a threshold value for specific types of information. This would for example be the case when the information flow SFP contains rules on access to statistical data where a subject is only allowed to access this type of information up to a specific number of accesses. An example for the second case would be a rule stating under which conditions and how the security attributes of a subject or object change as the result of an access operation.

Some information flow policies for example may limit the number of access operations to information with specific security attributes. If there are no additional rules then the PP/ST author should specify "none".

In FDP_IFF.1.4, the PP/ST author should specify the rules, based on security attributes, that explicitly authorise information flows. These rules are in addition to those specified in the preceding elements. They are included in FDP_IFF.1.4 as they are intended to contain exceptions to the rules in the preceding elements. An example of rules to explicitly authorise information flows is based on a privilege vector associated with a subject that always grants the subject the ability to cause an information flow for information that is covered by the SFP that has been specified. If such a capability is not desired, then the PP/ST author should specify "none".

In FDP_IFF.1.5, the PP/ST author should specify the rules, based on security attributes, that explicitly deny information flows. These rules are in addition to those specified in the preceding elements. They are included in FDP_IFF.1.5 as they are intended to contain exceptions to the rules in the preceding elements. An example of rules to explicitly deny information flows is based on a privilege vector associated with a subject that always denies the subject the ability to cause an information flow for information that is covered by the SFP that has been specified. If such a capability is not desired, then the PP/ST author should specify "none".

F.6.3 FDP_IFF.2 Hierarchical security attributes

F.6.3.1 User application notes

This component requires that the named information flow control SFP uses hierarchical security attributes that form a lattice.

It is important to note that the hierarchical relationship requirements identified in FDP_IFF.2.4 need only apply to the information flow control security attributes for the information flow control SFPs that have been identified in FDP_IFF.2.1. This component is not meant to apply to other SFPs such as access control SFPs.

FDP_IFF.2.6 phrases the requirements for the set of security attributes to form a lattice. A number of information flow policies defined in the literature and implemented in IT products are based on a set of security attributes that form a lattice. FDP_IFF.2.6 is specifically included to address this type of information flow policies.

If it is the case that multiple information flow control SFPs are to be specified, and that each of these SFPs will have their own security attributes that are not related to one another, then the PP/ST author should iterate this component once for each of those SFPs. Otherwise a conflict might arise with the sub-items of FDP_IFF.2.4 since the required relationships will not exist.

F.6.3.2 Operations

F.6.3.2.1 Assignment

In FDP_IFF.2.1, the PP/ST author should specify the information flow control SFPs enforced by the TSF. The name of the information flow control SFP, and the scope of control for that policy are defined in components from Information flow control policy (FDP_IFC).

In FDP_IFF.2.1, the PP/ST author should specify, for each type of controlled subject and information, the security attributes that are relevant to the specification of the SFP rules. For example, such security attributes may be things such the subject identifier, subject sensitivity label, subject clearance label, information sensitivity label, etc. The types of security attributes should be sufficient to support the environmental needs.

In FDP_IFF.2.2, the PP/ST author should specify for each operation, the security attribute-based relationship that must hold between subject and information security attributes that the TSF will enforce. These relationships should be based upon the ordering relationships between the security attributes.

In FDP_IFF.2.3, the PP/ST author should specify any additional information flow control SFP rules that the TSF is to enforce. This includes all rules of the SFP that are either not based on the security attributes of the information and the subject or rules that automatically modify the security attributes of information or subjects

as a result of an access operation. An example for the first case is a rule of the SFP controlling a threshold value for specific types of information. This would for example be the case when the information flow SFP contains rules on access to statistical data where a subject is only allowed to access this type of information up to a specific number of accesses. An example for the second case would be a rule stating under which conditions and how the security attributes of a subject or object change as the result of an access operation. Some information flow policies for example may limit the number of access operations to information with specific security attributes. If there are no additional rules then the PP/ST author should specify "none".

In FDP_IFF.2.4, the PP/ST author should specify the rules, based on security attributes, that explicitly authorise information flows. These rules are in addition to those specified in the preceding elements. They are included in FDP_IFF.2.4 as they are intended to contain exceptions to the rules in the preceding elements. An example of rules to explicitly authorise information flows is based on a privilege vector associated with a subject that always grants the subject the ability to cause an information flow for information that is covered by the SFP that has been specified. If such a capability is not desired, then the PP/ST author should specify "none".

In FDP_IFF.2.5, the PP/ST author should specify the rules, based on security attributes, that explicitly deny information flows. These rules are in addition to those specified in the preceding elements. They are included in FDP_IFF.2.5 as they are intended to contain exceptions to the rules in the preceding elements. An example of rules to explicitly deny information flows is based on a privilege vector associated with a subject that always denies the subject the ability to cause an information flow for information that is covered by the SFP that has been specified. If such a capability is not desired, then the PP/ST author should specify "none".

F.6.4 FDP_IFF.3 Limited illicit information flows

F.6.4.1 User application notes

This component should be used when at least one of the SFPs that requires control of illicit information flows does not require elimination of flows.

For the specified illicit information flows, certain maximum capacities should be provided. In addition a PP/ST author has the ability to specify whether the illicit information flows must be audited.

F.6.4.2 Operations

F.6.4.2.1 Assignment

In FDP_IFF.3.1, the PP/ST author should specify the information flow control SFPs enforced by the TSF. The name of the information flow control SFP, and the scope of control for that policy are defined in components from Information flow control policy (FDP_IFC).

In FDP_IFF.3.1, the PP/ST author should specify the types of illicit information flows that are subject to a maximum capacity limitation.

In FDP_IFF.3.1, the PP/ST author should specify the maximum capacity permitted for any identified illicit information flows.

F.6.5 FDP_IFF.4 Partial elimination of illicit information flows

F.6.5.1 User application notes

This component should be used when all the SFPs that requires control of illicit information flows require elimination of some (but not necessarily all) illicit information flows.

F.6.5.2 Operations**F.6.5.2.1 Assignment**

In FDP_IFF.4.1, the PP/ST author should specify the information flow control SFPs enforced by the TSF. The name of the information flow control SFP, and the scope of control for that policy are defined in components from Information flow control policy (FDP_IFC).

In FDP_IFF.4.1, the PP/ST author should specify the types of illicit information flows which are subject to a maximum capacity limitation.

In FDP_IFF.4.1, the PP/ST author should specify the maximum capacity permitted for any identified illicit information flows.

In FDP_IFF.4.2, the PP/ST author should specify the types of illicit information flows to be eliminated. This list may not be empty as this component requires that some illicit information flows are to be eliminated.

F.6.6 FDP_IFF.5 No illicit information flows**F.6.6.1 User application notes**

This component should be used when the SFPs that require control of illicit information flows require elimination of all illicit information flows. However, the PP/ST author should carefully consider the potential impact that eliminating all illicit information flows might have on the normal functional operation of the TOE. Many practical applications have shown that there is an indirect relationship between illicit information flows and normal functionality within a TOE and eliminating all illicit information flows may result in less than desired functionality.

F.6.6.2 Operations**F.6.6.2.1 Assignment**

In FDP_IFF.5.1, the PP/ST author should specify the information flow control SFP for which illicit information flows are to be eliminated. The name of the information flow control SFP, and the scope of control for that policy are defined in components from Information flow control policy (FDP_IFC).

F.6.7 FDP_IFF.6 Illicit information flow monitoring**F.6.7.1 User application notes**

This component should be used when it is desired that the TSF provide the ability to monitor the use of illicit information flows that exceed a specified capacity. If it is desired that such flows be audited, then this component could serve as the source of audit events to be used by components from the Security audit data generation (FAU_GEN) family.

F.6.7.2 Operations**F.6.7.2.1 Assignment**

In FDP_IFF.6.1, the PP/ST author should specify the information flow control SFPs enforced by the TSF. The name of the information flow control SFP, and the scope of control for that policy are defined in components from Information flow control policy (FDP_IFC).

In FDP_IFF.6.1, the PP/ST author should specify the types of illicit information flows that will be monitored for exceeding a maximum capacity.

In FDP_IFF.6.1, the PP/ST author should specify the maximum capacity above which illicit information flows will be monitored by the TSF.

F.7 Import from outside of the TOE (FDP_ITC)

F.7.1 User notes

This family defines mechanisms for TSF-mediated importing of user data from outside the TOE into the TOE such that the user data security attributes can be preserved. Consistency of these security attributes are addressed by Inter-TSF TSF data consistency (FPT_TDC).

Import from outside of the TOE (FDP_ITC) is concerned with limitations on import, user specification of security attributes, and association of security attributes with the user data.

This family, and the corresponding export family Export from the TOE (FDP_ETC), address how the TOE deals with user data outside its control. This family is concerned with assigning and abstraction of the user data security attributes.

A variety of activities might be involved here:

- a) importing user data from an unformatted medium (e.g. floppy disk, tape, scanner, video or audit signal), without including any security attributes, and physically marking the medium to indicate its contents;
- b) importing user data, including security attributes, from a medium and verifying that the object security attributes are appropriate;
- c) importing user data, including security attributes, from a medium using a cryptographic sealing technique to protect the association of user data and security attributes.

This family is not concerned with the determination of whether the user data may be imported. It is concerned with the values of the security attributes to associate with the imported user data.

There are two possibilities for the import of user data: either the user data is unambiguously associated with reliable object security attributes (values and meaning of the security attributes is not modified), or no reliable security attributes (or no security attributes at all), are available from the import source. This family addresses both cases.

If there are reliable security attributes available, they may have been associated with the user data by physical means (the security attributes are on the same media), or by logical means (the security attributes are distributed differently, but include unique object identification, e.g. cryptographic checksum).

This family is concerned with TSF-mediated importing of user data and maintaining the association of security attributes as required by the SFP. Other families are concerned with other import aspects such as consistency, trusted channels, and integrity that are beyond the scope of this family. Furthermore, Import from outside of the TOE (FDP_ITC) is only concerned with the interface to the import medium. Export from the TOE (FDP_ETC) is responsible for the other end point of the medium (the source).

Some of the well known import requirements are:

- a) importing of user data without any security attributes;
- b) importing of user data including security attributes where the two are associated with one another and the security attributes unambiguously represent the information being imported.

These import requirements may be handled by the TSF with or without human intervention, depending on the IT limitations and the organisational security policy. For example, if user data is received on a "confidential" channel, the security attributes of the objects will be set to "confidential".

If there are multiple SFPs (access control and/or information flow control) then it may be appropriate to iterate these components once for each named SFP.

F.7.2 FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes

F.7.2.1 User application notes

This component is used to specify the import of user data that does not have reliable (or any) security attributes associated with it. This function requires that the security attributes for the imported user data be initialised within the TSF. It could also be the case that the PP/ST author specifies the rules for import. It may be appropriate, in some environments, to require that these attributes be supplied via a trusted path or a trusted channel mechanism.

F.7.2.2 Operations

F.7.2.2.1 Assignment

In FDP_ITC.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify the access control SFP(s) and/or information flow control SFP(s) that will be enforced when importing user data from outside of the TOE. The user data that this function imports is scoped by the assignment of these SFPs.

In FDP_ITC.1.3, the PP/ST author should specify any additional importation control rules or “none” if there are no additional importation control rules. These rules will be enforced by the TSF in addition to the access control SFPs and/or information flow control SFPs selected in FDP_ITC.1.1.

F.7.3 FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes

F.7.3.1 User application notes

This component is used to specify the import of user data that has reliable security attributes associated with it. This function relies upon the security attributes that are accurately and unambiguously associated with the objects on the import medium. Once imported, those objects will have those same attributes. This requires Inter-TSF TSF data consistency (FPT_TDC) to ensure the consistency of the data. It could also be the case that the PP/ST author specifies the rules for import.

F.7.3.2 Operations

F.7.3.2.1 Assignment

In FDP_ITC.2.1, the PP/ST author should specify the access control SFP(s) and/or information flow control SFP(s) that will be enforced when importing user data from outside of the TOE. The user data that this function imports is scoped by the assignment of these SFPs.

In FDP_ITC.2.5, the PP/ST author should specify any additional importation control rules or “none” if there are no additional importation control rules. These rules will be enforced by the TSF in addition to the access control SFPs and/or information flow control SFPs selected in FDP_ITC.2.1.

F.8 Internal TOE transfer (FDP_ITT)

F.8.1 User notes

This family provides requirements that address protection of user data when it is transferred between parts of a TOE across an internal channel. This may be contrasted with the Inter-TSF user data confidentiality transfer protection (FDP_UCT) and Inter-TSF user data integrity transfer protection (FDP_UIT) family, which provide protection for user data when it is transferred between distinct TSFs across an external channel, and Export from the TOE (FDP_ETC) and Import from outside of the TOE (FDP_ITC), which address TSF-mediated transfer of data to or from outside the TOE.

The requirements in this family allow a PP/ST author to specify the desired security for user data while in transit within the TOE. This security could be protection against disclosure, modification, or loss of availability.

The determination of the degree of physical separation above which this family should apply depends on the intended environment of use. In a hostile environment, there may be risks arising from transfers between parts of the TOE separated by only a system bus. In more benign environments, the transfers may be across more traditional network media.

If there are multiple SFPs (access control and/or information flow control) then it may be appropriate to iterate these components once for each named SFP.

F.8.2 FDP_ITT.1 Basic internal transfer protection

F.8.2.1 Operations

F.8.2.1.1 Assignment

In FDP_ITT.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify the access control SFP(s) and/or information flow control SFP(s) covering the information being transferred.

F.8.2.1.2 Selection

In FDP_ITT.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify the types of transmission errors that the TSF should prevent occurring for user data while in transport. The options are disclosure, modification, loss of use.

F.8.3 FDP_ITT.2 Transmission separation by attribute

F.8.3.1 User application notes

This component could, for example, be used to provide different forms of protection to information with different clearance levels.

One of the ways to achieve separation of data when it is transmitted is through the use of separate logical or physical channels.

F.8.3.2 Operations

F.8.3.2.1 Assignment

In FDP_ITT.2.1, the PP/ST author should specify the access control SFP(s) and/or information flow control SFP(s) covering the information being transferred.

F.8.3.2.2 Selection

In FDP_ITT.2.1, the PP/ST author should specify the types of transmission errors that the TSF should prevent occurring for user data while in transport. The options are disclosure, modification, loss of use.

F.8.3.2.3 Assignment

In FDP_ITT.2.2, the PP/ST author should specify the security attributes, the values of which the TSF will use to determine when to separate data that is being transmitted between physically-separated parts of the TOE. An example is that user data associated with the identity of one owner is transmitted separately from the user data associated with the identity of a different owner. In this case, the value of the identity of the owner of the data is what is used to determine when to separate the data for transmission.

F.8.4 FDP_ITT.3 Integrity monitoring

F.8.4.1 User application notes

This component is used in combination with either FDP_ITT.1 Basic internal transfer protection or FDP_ITT.2 Transmission separation by attribute. It ensures that the TSF checks received user data (and their attributes) for integrity. FDP_ITT.1 Basic internal transfer protection or FDP_ITT.2 Transmission separation by attribute

will provide the data in a manner such that it is protected from modification (so that FDP_ITT.3 Integrity monitoring can detect any modifications).

The PP/ST author has to specify the types of errors that must be detected. The PP/ST author should consider: modification of data, substitution of data, unrecoverable ordering change of data, replay of data, incomplete data, in addition to other integrity errors.

The PP/ST author must specify the actions that the TSF should take on detection of a failure. For example: ignore the user data, request the data again, inform the authorised administrator, reroute traffic for other lines.

F.8.4.2 Operations

F.8.4.2.1 Assignment

In FDP_ITT.3.1, the PP/ST author should specify the access control SFP(s) and/or information flow control SFP(s) covering the information being transferred and monitored for integrity errors.

In FDP_ITT.3.1, the PP/ST author should specify the type of possible integrity errors to be monitored during transmission of the user data.

In FDP_ITT.3.2, the PP/ST author should specify the action to be taken by the TSF when an integrity error is encountered. An example might be that the TSF should request the resubmission of the user data. The SFP(s) specified in FDP_ITT.3.1 will be enforced as the actions are taken by the TSF.

F.8.5 FDP_ITT.4 Attribute-based integrity monitoring

F.8.5.1 User application notes

This component is used in combination with FDP_ITT.2 Transmission separation by attribute. It ensures that the TSF checks received user data, that has been transmitted by separate channels (based on values of specified security attributes), for integrity. It allows the PP/ST author to specify actions to be taken upon detection of an integrity error.

For example, this component could be used to provide different integrity error detection and action for information at different integrity levels.

The PP/ST author has to specify the types of errors that must be detected. The PP/ST author should consider: modification of data, substitution of data, unrecoverable ordering change of data, replay of data, incomplete data, in addition to other integrity errors.

The PP/ST author should specify the attributes (and associated transmission channels) that necessitate integrity error monitoring.

The PP/ST author must specify the actions that the TSF should take on detection of a failure. For example: ignore the user data, request the data again, inform the authorised administrator, reroute traffic for other lines.

F.8.5.2 Operations

F.8.5.2.1 Assignment

In FDP_ITT.4.1, the PP/ST author should specify the access control SFP(s) and/or information flow control SFP(s) covering the information being transferred and monitored for integrity errors.

In FDP_ITT.4.1, the PP/ST author should specify the type of possible integrity errors to be monitored during transmission of the user data.

In FDP_ITT.4.1, the PP/ST author should specify a list of security attributes that require separate transmission channels. This list is used to determine which user data to monitor for integrity errors., based on its security

attributes and its transmission channel. This element is directly related to FDP_ITT.2 Transmission separation by attribute.

In FDP_ITT.4.2, the PP/ST author should specify the action to be taken by the TSF when an integrity error is encountered. An example might be that the TSF should request the resubmission of the user data. The SFP(s) specified in FDP_ITT.3.1 will be enforced as the actions are taken by the TSF.

F.9 Residual information protection (FDP_RIP)

F.9.1 User notes

Residual information protection ensures that TSF-controlled resources when de-allocated from an object and before they are reallocated to another object are treated by the TSF in a way that it is not possible to reconstruct all or part of the data contained in the resource before it was de-allocated.

A TOE usually has a number of functions that potentially de-allocate resources from an object and potentially re-allocate those resources to objects. Some, but not all of those resources may have been used to store critical data from the previous use of the resource and for those resources FDP_RIP requires that they are prepared for reuse. Object reuse applies to explicit requests of a subject or user to release resources as well as implicit actions of the TSF that result in the de-allocation and subsequent re-allocation of resources to different objects. Examples of explicit requests are the deletion or truncation of a file or the release of an area of main memory. Examples of implicit actions of the TSF are the de-allocation and re-allocation of cache regions.

The requirement for object reuse is related to the content of the resource belonging to an object, not all information about the resource or object that may be stored elsewhere in the TSF. As an example to satisfy the FDP_RIP requirement for files as objects requires that all sectors that make up the file need to be prepared for re-use.

It also applies to resources that are serially reused by different subjects within the system. For example, most operating systems typically rely upon hardware registers (resources) to support processes within the system. As processes are swapped from a "run" state to a "sleep" state (and vice versa), these registers are serially reused by different subjects. While this "swapping" action may not be considered an allocation or deallocation of a resource, Residual information protection (FDP_RIP) could apply to such events and resources.

Residual information protection (FDP_RIP) typically controls access to information that is not part of any currently defined or accessible object; however, in certain cases this may not be true. For example, object "A" is a file and object "B" is the disk upon which that file resides. If object "A" is deleted, the information from object "A" is under the control of Residual information protection (FDP_RIP) even though it is still part of object "B".

It is important to note that Residual information protection (FDP_RIP) applies only to on-line objects and not off-line objects such as those backed-up on tapes. For example, if a file is deleted in the TOE, Residual information protection (FDP_RIP) can be instantiated to require that no residual information exists upon deallocation; however, the TSF cannot extend this enforcement to that same file that exists on the off-line back-up. Therefore that same file is still available. If this is a concern, then the PP/ST author should make sure that the proper environmental objectives are in place to support operational user guidance to address off-line objects.

Residual information protection (FDP_RIP) and Rollback (FDP_ROL) can conflict when Residual information protection (FDP_RIP) is instantiated to require that residual information be cleared at the time the application releases the object to the TSF (i.e. upon deallocation). Therefore, the Residual information protection (FDP_RIP) selection of "deallocation" should not be used with Rollback (FDP_ROL) since there would be no information to roll back. The other selection, "unavailability upon allocation", may be used with Rollback (FDP_ROL), but there is the risk that the resource which held the information has been allocated to a new object before the roll back took place. If that were to occur, then the roll back would not be possible.

There are no audit requirements in Residual information protection (FDP_RIP) because this is not a user-invokable function. Auditing of allocated or deallocated resources would be auditable as part of the access control SFP or the information flow control SFP operations.

This family should apply to the objects specified in the access control SFP(s) or the information flow control SFP(s) as specified by the PP/ST author.

F.9.2 FDP_RIP.1 Subset residual information protection

F.9.2.1 User application notes

This component requires that, for a subset of the objects in the TOE, the TSF will ensure that there is no available residual information contained in a resource allocated to those objects or deallocated from those objects.

F.9.2.2 Operations

F.9.2.2.1 Selection

In FDP_RIP.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify the event, allocation of the resource to or deallocation of the resource from, that invokes the residual information protection function.

F.9.2.2.2 Assignment

In FDP_RIP.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify the list of objects subject to residual information protection.

F.9.3 FDP_RIP.2 Full residual information protection

F.9.3.1 User application notes

This component requires that for all objects in the TOE, the TSF will ensure that there is no available residual information contained in a resource allocated to those objects or deallocated from those objects.

F.9.3.2 Operations

F.9.3.2.1 Selection

In FDP_RIP.2.1, the PP/ST author should specify the event, allocation of the resource to or deallocation of the resource from, that invokes the residual information protection function.

F.10 Rollback (FDP_ROL)

F.10.1 User notes

This family addresses the need to return to a well defined valid state, such as the need of a user to undo modifications to a file or to undo transactions in case of an incomplete series of transaction as in the case of databases.

This family is intended to assist a user in returning to a well defined valid state after the user undoes the last set of actions, or, in distributed databases, the return of all of the distributed copies of the databases to the state before an operation failed.

Residual information protection (FDP_RIP) and Rollback (FDP_ROL) conflict when Residual information protection (FDP_RIP) enforces that the contents will be made unavailable at the time that a resource is deallocated from an object. Therefore, this use of Residual information protection (FDP_RIP) cannot be combined with Rollback (FDP_ROL) as there would be no information to roll back. Residual information protection (FDP_RIP) can be used only with Rollback (FDP_ROL) when it enforces that the contents will be unavailable at the time that a resource is allocated to an object. This is because the Rollback (FDP_ROL)

mechanism will have an opportunity to access the previous information that may still be present in the TOE in order to successfully roll back the operation.

The rollback requirement is bounded by certain limits. For example a text editor typically only allows you roll back up to a certain number of commands. Another example would be backups. If backup tapes are rotated, after a tape is reused, the information can no longer be retrieved. This also poses a bound on the rollback requirement.

F.10.2 FDP_ROL.1 Basic rollback

F.10.2.1 User application notes

This component allows a user or subject to undo a set of operations on a predefined set of objects. The undo is only possible within certain limits, for example up to a number of characters or up to a time limit.

F.10.2.2 Operations

F.10.2.2.1 Assignment

In FDP_ROL.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify the access control SFP(s) and/or information flow control SFP(s) that will be enforced when performing rollback operations. This is necessary to make sure that roll back is not used to circumvent the specified SFPs.

In FDP_ROL.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify the list of operations that can be rolled back.

In FDP_ROL.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify the information and/or list of objects that are subjected to the rollback policy.

In FDP_ROL.1.2, the PP/ST author should specify the boundary limit to which rollback operations may be performed. The boundary may be specified as a predefined period of time, for example, operations may be undone which were performed within the past two minutes. Other possible boundaries may be defined as the maximum number of operations allowable or the size of a buffer.

F.10.3 FDP_ROL.2 Advanced rollback

F.10.3.1 User application notes

This component enforces that the TSF provide the capability to rollback all operations; however, the user can choose to rollback only a part of them.

F.10.3.2 Operations

F.10.3.2.1 Assignment

In FDP_ROL.2.1, the PP/ST author should specify the access control SFP(s) and/or information flow control SFP(s) that will be enforced when performing rollback operations. This is necessary to make sure that roll back is not used to circumvent the specified SFPs.

In FDP_ROL.2.1, the PP/ST author should specify the list of objects that are subjected to the rollback policy.

In FDP_ROL.2.2, the PP/ST author should specify the boundary limit to which rollback operations may be performed. The boundary may be specified as a predefined period of time, for example, operations may be undone which were performed within the past two minutes. Other possible boundaries may be defined as the maximum number of operations allowable or the size of a buffer.

F.11 Stored data integrity (FDP_SDI)

F.11.1 User notes

This family provides requirements that address protection of user data while it is stored within containers controlled by the TSF.

Hardware glitches or errors may affect data stored in memory. This family provides requirements to detect these unintentional errors. The integrity of user data while stored on storage devices controlled by the TSF are also addressed by this family.

To prevent a subject from modifying the data, the Information flow control functions (FDP_IFF) or Access control functions (FDP_ACF) families are required (rather than this family).

This family differs from Internal TOE transfer (FDP_ITT) that protects the user data from integrity errors while being transferred within the TOE.

F.11.2 FDP_SDI.1 Stored data integrity monitoring

F.11.2.1 User application notes

This component monitors data stored on media for integrity errors. The PP/ST author can specify different kinds of user data attributes that will be used as the basis for monitoring.

F.11.2.2 Operations

F.11.2.2.1 Assignment

In FDP_SDI.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify the integrity errors that the TSF will detect.

In FDP_SDI.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify the user data attributes that will be used as the basis for the monitoring.

F.11.3 FDP_SDI.2 Stored data integrity monitoring and action

F.11.3.1 User application notes

This component monitors data stored on media for integrity errors. The PP/ST author can specify which action should be taken in case an integrity error is detected.

F.11.3.2 Operations

F.11.3.2.1 Assignment

In FDP_SDI.2.1, the PP/ST author should specify the integrity errors that the TSF will detect.

In FDP_SDI.2.1, the PP/ST author should specify the user data attributes that will be used as the basis for the monitoring.

In FDP_SDI.2.2, the PP/ST author should specify the actions to be taken in case an integrity error is detected.

F.12 Inter-TSF user data confidentiality transfer protection (FDP_UCT)

F.12.1 User notes

This family defines the requirements for ensuring the confidentiality of user data when it is transferred using an external channel between the TOE and another trusted IT product. Confidentiality is enforced by

preventing unauthorised disclosure of user data in transit between the two end points. The end points may be a TSF or a user.

This family provides a requirement for the protection of user data during transit. In contrast, Confidentiality of exported TSF data (FPT_ITC) handles TSF data.

F.12.2 FDP_UCT.1 Basic data exchange confidentiality

F.12.2.1 User application notes

The TSF has the ability to protect from disclosure some user data which is exchanged.

F.12.2.2 Operations

F.12.2.2.1 Assignment

In FDP_UCT.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify the access control SFP(s) and/or information flow control SFP(s) that will be enforced when exchanging user data. The specified policies will be enforced to make decisions about who can exchange data and which data can be exchanged.

F.12.2.2.2 Selection

In FDP_UCT.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify whether this element applies to a mechanism that transmits or receives user data.

F.13 Inter-TSF user data integrity transfer protection (FDP_UIT)

F.13.1 User notes

This family defines the requirements for providing integrity for user data in transit between the TSF and another trusted IT product and recovering from detectable errors. At a minimum, this family monitors the integrity of user data for modifications. Furthermore, this family supports different ways of correcting detected integrity errors.

This family defines the requirements for providing integrity for user data in transit; while Integrity of exported TSF data (FPT_ITI) handles TSF data.

Inter-TSF user data integrity transfer protection (FDP_UIT) and Inter-TSF user data confidentiality transfer protection (FDP_UCT) are duals of each other, as Inter-TSF user data confidentiality transfer protection (FDP_UCT) addresses user data confidentiality. Therefore, the same mechanism that implements Inter-TSF user data integrity transfer protection (FDP_UIT) could possibly be used to implement other families such as Inter-TSF user data confidentiality transfer protection (FDP_UCT) and Import from outside of the TOE (FDP_ITC).

F.13.2 FDP_UIT.1 Data exchange integrity

F.13.2.1 User application notes

The TSF has a basic ability to send or receive user data in a manner such that modification of the user data can be detected. There is no requirement for a TSF mechanism to attempt to recover from the modification.

F.13.2.2 Operations

F.13.2.2.1 Assignment

In FDP_UIT.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify the access control SFP(s) and/or information flow control SFP(s) that will be enforced on the transmitted data or on the received data. The specified policies will be enforced to make decisions about who can transmit or who can receive data, and which data can be transmitted or received.

F.13.2.2.2 Selection

In FDP_UIT.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify whether this element applies to a TSF that is transmitting or receiving objects.

In FDP_UIT.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify whether the data should be protected from modification, deletion, insertion or replay.

In FDP_UIT.1.2, the PP/ST author should specify whether the errors of the type: modification, deletion, insertion or replay are detected.

F.13.3 FDP_UIT.2 Source data exchange recovery**F.13.3.1 User application notes**

This component provides the ability to recover from a set of identified transmission errors, if required, with the help of the other trusted IT product. As the other trusted IT product is outside the TOE, the TSF cannot control its behaviour. However, it can provide functions that have the ability to cooperate with the other trusted IT product for the purposes of recovery. For example, the TSF could include functions that depend upon the source trusted IT product to re-send the data in the event that an error is detected. This component deals with the ability of the TSF to handle such an error recovery.

F.13.3.2 Operations**F.13.3.2.1 Assignment**

In FDP_UIT.2.1, the PP/ST author should specify the access control SFP(s) and/or information flow control SFP(s) that will be enforced when recovering user data. The specified policies will be enforced to make decisions about which data can be recovered and how it can be recovered.

In FDP_UIT.2.1, the PP/ST author should specify the list of integrity errors from which the TSF, with the help of the source trusted IT product, is able to recover the original user data.

F.13.4 FDP_UIT.3 Destination data exchange recovery**F.13.4.1 User application notes**

This component provides the ability to recover from a set of identified transmission errors. It accomplishes this task without help from the source trusted IT product. For example, if certain errors are detected, the transmission protocol must be robust enough to allow the TSF to recover from the error based on checksums and other information available within that protocol.

F.13.4.2 Operations**F.13.4.2.1 Assignment**

In FDP_UIT.3.1, the PP/ST author should specify the access control SFP(s) and/or information flow control SFP(s) that will be enforced when recovering user data. The specified policies will be enforced to make decisions about which data can be recovered and how it can be recovered.

In FDP_UIT.3.1, the PP/ST author should specify the list of integrity errors from which the receiving TSF, alone, is able to recover the original user data.

Annex G (normative)

Class FIA: Identification and authentication

A common security requirement is to unambiguously identify the person and/or entity performing functions in a TOE. This involves not only establishing the claimed identity of each user, but also verifying that each user is indeed who he/she claims to be. This is achieved by requiring users to provide the TSF with some information that is known by the TSF to be associated with the user in question.

Families in this class address the requirements for functions to establish and verify a claimed user identity. Identification and Authentication is required to ensure that users are associated with the proper security attributes (e.g. identity, groups, roles, security or integrity levels).

The unambiguous identification of authorised users and the correct association of security attributes with users and subjects is critical to the enforcement of the security policies.

The User identification (FIA_UID) family addresses determining the identity of a user.

The User authentication (FIA_UAU) family addresses verifying the identity of a user.

The Authentication failures (FIA_AFL) family addresses defining limits on repeated unsuccessful authentication attempts.

The User attribute definition (FIA_ATD) family address the definition of user attributes that are used in the enforcement of the SFRs.

The User-subject binding (FIA_USB) family addresses the correct association of security attributes for each authorised user.

The Specification of secrets (FIA_SOS) family addresses the generation and verification of secrets that satisfy a defined metric.

Figure G.1 shows the decomposition of this class into its constituent components.

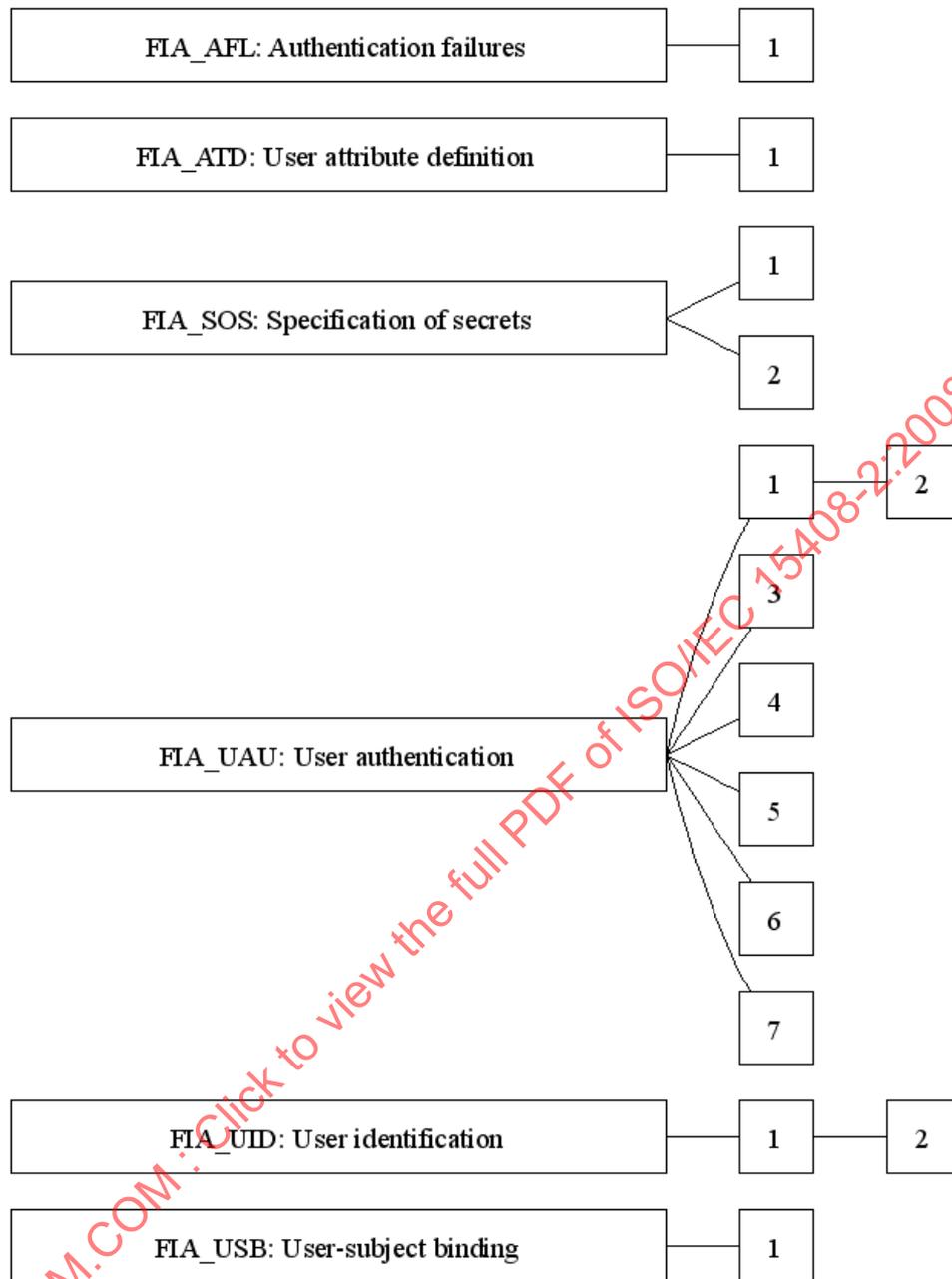


Figure G.1 - FIA: Identification and authentication class decomposition

G.1 Authentication failures (FIA_AFL)

G.1.1 User notes

This family addresses requirements for defining values for authentication attempts and TSF actions in cases of authentication attempt failure. Parameters include, but are not limited to, the number of attempts and time thresholds.

The session establishment process is the interaction with the user to perform the session establishment independent of the actual implementation. If the number of unsuccessful authentication attempts exceeds the indicated threshold, either the user account or the terminal (or both) will be locked. If the user account is disabled, the user cannot log-on to the system. If the terminal is disabled, the terminal (or the address that the terminal has) cannot be used for any log-on. Both of these situations continue until the condition for re-establishment is satisfied.

G.1.2 FIA_AFL.1 Authentication failure handling

G.1.2.1 User application notes

The PP/ST author may define the number of unsuccessful authentication attempts or may choose to let the TOE developer or the authorised user to define this number. The unsuccessful authentication attempts need not be consecutive, but rather related to an authentication event. Such an authentication event could be the count from the last successful session establishment at a given terminal.

The PP/ST author could specify a list of actions that the TSF shall take in the case of authentication failure. An authorised administrator could also be allowed to manage the events, if deemed opportune by the PP/ST author. These actions could be, among other things, terminal deactivation, user account deactivation, or administrator alarm. The conditions under which the situation will be restored to normal must be specified on the action.

In order to prevent denial of service, TOEs usually ensure that there is at least one user account that cannot be disabled.

Further actions for the TSF can be stated by the PP/ST author, including rules for re-enabling the user session establishment process, or sending an alarm to the administrator. Examples of these actions are: until a specified time has lapsed, until the authorised administrator re-enables the terminal/account, a time related to failed previous attempts (every time the attempt fails, the disabling time is doubled).

G.1.2.2 Operations

G.1.2.2.1 Selection

In FIA_AFL.1.1, the PP/ST author should select either the assignment of a positive integer, or the phrase “an administrator configurable positive integer” specifying the range of acceptable values.

G.1.2.2.2 Assignment

In FIA_AFL.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify the authentication events. Examples of these authentication events are: the unsuccessful authentication attempts since the last successful authentication for the indicated user identity, the unsuccessful authentication attempts since the last successful authentication for the current terminal, the number of unsuccessful authentication attempts in the last 10 minutes. At least one authentication event must be specified.

In FIA_AFL.1.1, if the assignment of a positive integer is selected, the PP/ST author should specify the default number (positive integer) of unsuccessful authentication attempts that, when met or surpassed, will trigger the events.

In FIA_AFL.1.1, if an administrator configurable positive integer is selected, the PP/ST author should specify the range of acceptable values from which the administrator of the TOE may configure the number of unsuccessful authentication attempts. The number of authentication attempts should be less than or equal to the upper bound and greater or equal to the lower bound values.

G.1.2.2.3 Selection

In FIA_AFL.1.2, the PP/ST author should select whether the event of meeting or surpassing the defined number of unsuccessful authentication attempts shall trigger an action by the TSF.

G.1.2.2.4 Assignment

In FIA_AFL.1.2, the PP/ST author should specify the actions to be taken in case the threshold is met or surpassed, as selected. These actions could be disabling of an account for 5 minutes, disabling the terminal for an increasing amount of time (2 to the power of the number of unsuccessful attempts in seconds), or disabling of the account until unlocked by the administrator and simultaneously informing the administrator.

The actions should specify the measures and if applicable the duration of the measure (or the conditions under which the measure will be ended).

G.2 User attribute definition (FIA_ATD)

G.2.1 User notes

All authorised users may have a set of security attributes, other than the user's identity, that are used to enforce the SFRs. This family defines the requirements for associating user security attributes with users as needed to support the TSF in making security decisions.

There are dependencies on the individual security policy (SFP) definitions. These individual definitions should contain the listing of attributes that are necessary for policy enforcement.

G.2.2 FIA_ATD.1 User attribute definition

G.2.2.1 User application notes

This component specifies the security attributes that should be maintained at the level of the user. This means that the security attributes listed are assigned to and can be changed at the level of the user. In other words, changing a security attribute in this list associated with a user should have no impact on the security attributes of any other user.

In case security attributes belong to a group of users (such as Capability List for a group), the user will need to have a reference (as security attribute) to the relevant group.

G.2.2.2 Operations

G.2.2.2.1 Assignment

In FIA_ATD.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify the security attributes that are associated to an individual user. An example of such a list is {"clearance", "group identifier", "rights"}.

G.3 Specification of secrets (FIA_SOS)

G.3.1 User notes

This family defines requirements for mechanisms that enforce defined quality metrics on provided secrets, and generate secrets to satisfy the defined metric. Examples of such mechanisms may include automated checking of user supplied passwords, or automated password generation.

A secret can be generated outside the TOE (e.g. selected by the user and introduced in the TOE). In such cases, the FIA_SOS.1 Verification of secrets component can be used to ensure that the external generated secret adheres to certain standards, for example a minimum size, not present in a dictionary, and/or not previously used.

Secrets can also be generated by the TOE. In those cases, the FIA_SOS.2 TSF Generation of secrets component can be used to require the TOE to ensure that the secrets that will adhere to some specified metrics.

Secrets contain the authentication data provided by the user for an authentication mechanism that is based on knowledge the user possesses. When cryptographic keys are employed, the class FCS: Cryptographic support should be used instead of this family.

G.3.2 FIA_SOS.1 Verification of secrets

G.3.2.1 User application notes

Secrets can be generated by the user. This component ensures that those user generated secrets can be verified to meet a certain quality metric.

G.3.2.2 Operations

G.3.2.2.1 Assignment

In FIA_SOS.1.1, the PP/ST author should provide a defined quality metric. The quality metric specification can be as simple as a description of the quality checks to be performed, or as formal as a reference to a government published standard that defines the quality metrics that secrets must meet. Examples of quality metrics could include a description of the alphanumeric structure of acceptable secrets and/or the space size that acceptable secrets must meet.

G.3.3 FIA_SOS.2 TSF Generation of secrets

G.3.3.1 User application notes

This component allows the TSF to generate secrets for specific functions such as authentication by means of passwords.

When a pseudo-random number generator is used in a secret generation algorithm, it should accept as input random data that would provide output that has a high degree of unpredictability. This random data (seed) can be derived from a number of available parameters such as a system clock, system registers, date, time, etc. The parameters should be selected to ensure that the number of unique seeds that can be generated from these inputs should be at least equal to the minimum number of secrets that must be generated.

G.3.3.2 Operations

G.3.3.2.1 Assignment

In FIA_SOS.2.1, the PP/ST author should provide a defined quality metric. The quality metric specification can be as simple as a description of the quality checks to be performed or as formal as a reference to a government published standard that defines the quality metrics that secrets must meet. Examples of quality metrics could include a description of the alphanumeric structure of acceptable secrets and/or the space size that acceptable secrets must meet.

In FIA_SOS.2.2, the PP/ST author should provide a list of TSF functions for which the TSF generated secrets must be used. An example of such a function could include a password based authentication mechanism.

G.4 User authentication (FIA_UAU)

G.4.1 User notes

This family defines the types of user authentication mechanisms supported by the TSF. This family defines the required attributes on which the user authentication mechanisms must be based.

G.4.2 FIA_UAU.1 Timing of authentication

G.4.2.1 User application notes

This component requires that the PP/ST author define the TSF-mediated actions that can be performed by the TSF on behalf of the user before the claimed identity of the user is authenticated. The TSF-mediated actions should have no security concerns with users incorrectly identifying themselves prior to being authenticated.

For all other TSF-mediated actions not in the list, the user must be authenticated before the action can be performed by the TSF on behalf of the user.

This component cannot control whether the actions can also be performed before the identification took place. This requires the use of either FIA_UID.1 Timing of identification or FIA_UID.2 User identification before any action with the appropriate assignments.

G.4.2.2 Operations

G.4.2.2.1 Assignment

In FIA_UAU.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify a list of TSF-mediated actions that can be performed by the TSF on behalf of a user before the claimed identity of the user is authenticated. This list cannot be empty. If no actions are appropriate, component FIA_UAU.2 User authentication before any action should be used instead. An example of such an action might include the request for help on the login procedure.

G.4.3 FIA_UAU.2 User authentication before any action

G.4.3.1 User application notes

This component requires that a user is authenticated before any other TSF-mediated action can take place on behalf of that user.

G.4.4 FIA_UAU.3 Unforgeable authentication

G.4.4.1 User application notes

This component addresses requirements for mechanisms that provide protection of authentication data. Authentication data that is copied from another user, or is in some way constructed should be detected and/or rejected. These mechanisms provide confidence that users authenticated by the TSF are actually who they claim to be.

This component may be useful only with authentication mechanisms that are based on authentication data that cannot be shared (e.g. biometrics). It is impossible for a TSF to detect or prevent the sharing of passwords outside the control of the TSF.

G.4.4.2 Operations

G.4.4.2.1 Selection

In FIA_UAU.3.1, the PP/ST author should specify whether the TSF will detect, prevent, or detect and prevent forging of authentication data.

In FIA_UAU.3.2, the PP/ST author should specify whether the TSF will detect, prevent, or detect and prevent copying of authentication data.

G.4.5 FIA_UAU.4 Single-use authentication mechanisms

G.4.5.1 User application notes

This component addresses requirements for authentication mechanisms based on single-use authentication data. Single-use authentication data can be something the user has or knows, but not something the user is. Examples of single-use authentication data include single-use passwords, encrypted time-stamps, and/or random numbers from a secret lookup table.

The PP/ST author can specify to which authentication mechanism(s) this requirement applies.

G.4.5.2 Operations

G.4.5.2.1 Assignment

In FIA_UAU.4.1, the PP/ST author should specify the list of authentication mechanisms to which this requirement applies. This assignment can be “all authentication mechanisms”. An example of this assignment could be “the authentication mechanism employed to authenticate people on the external network”.

G.4.6 FIA_UAU.5 Multiple authentication mechanisms

G.4.6.1 User application notes

The use of this component allows specification of requirements for more than one authentication mechanism to be used within a TOE. For each distinct mechanism, applicable requirements must be chosen from the FIA: Identification and authentication class to be applied to each mechanism. It is possible that the same component could be selected multiple times in order to reflect different requirements for the different use of the authentication mechanism.

The management functions in the class FMT may provide maintenance capabilities for the set of authentication mechanisms, as well as the rules that determine whether the authentication was successful.

To allow anonymous users to interact with the TOE, a “none” authentication mechanism can be incorporated. The use of such access should be clearly explained in the rules of FIA_UAU.5.2.

G.4.6.2 Operations

G.4.6.2.1 Assignment

In FIA_UAU.5.1, the PP/ST author should define the available authentication mechanisms. An example of such a list could be: “none, password mechanism, biometric (retinal scan), S/key mechanism”.

In FIA_UAU.5.2, the PP/ST author should specify the rules that describe how the authentication mechanisms provide authentication and when each is to be used. This means that for each situation the set of mechanisms that might be used for authenticating the user must be described. An example of a list of such rules is: “if the user has special privileges a password mechanism and a biometric mechanism both shall be used, with success only if both succeed; for all other users a password mechanism shall be used.”

The PP/ST author might give the boundaries within which the authorised administrator may specify specific rules. An example of a rule is: “the user shall always be authenticated by means of a token; the administrator might specify additional authentication mechanisms that also must be used.” The PP/ST author also might choose not to specify any boundaries but leave the authentication mechanisms and their rules completely up to the authorised administrator.

G.4.7 FIA_UAU.6 Re-authenticating

G.4.7.1 User application notes

This component addresses potential needs to re-authenticate users at defined points in time. These may include user requests for the TSF to perform security relevant actions, as well as requests from non-TSF entities for re-authentication (e.g. a server application requesting that the TSF re-authenticate the client it is serving).

G.4.7.2 Operations

G.4.7.2.1 Assignment

In FIA_UAU.6.1, the PP/ST author should specify the list of conditions requiring re-authentication. This list could include a specified user inactivity period that has elapsed, the user requesting a change in active security attributes, or the user requesting the TSF to perform some security critical function.

The PP/ST author might give the boundaries within which the reauthentication should occur and leave the specifics to the authorised administrator. An example of such a rule is: “the user shall always be re-authenticated at least once a day; the administrator might specify that the re-authentication should happen more often but not more often than once every 10 minutes.”

G.4.8 FIA_UAU.7 Protected authentication feedback

G.4.8.1 User application notes

This component addresses the feedback on the authentication process that will be provided to the user. In some systems the feedback consists of indicating how many characters have been typed but not showing the characters themselves, in other systems even this information might not be appropriate.

This component requires that the authentication data is not provided as-is back to the user. In a workstation environment, it could display a “dummy” (e.g. star) for each password character provided, and not the original character.

G.4.8.2 Operations

G.4.8.2.1 Assignment

In FIA_UAU.7.1, the PP/ST author should specify the feedback related to the authentication process that will be provided to the user. An example of a feedback assignment is “the number of characters typed”, another type of feedback is “the authentication mechanism that failed the authentication”.

G.5 User identification (FIA_UID)

G.5.1 User notes

This family defines the conditions under which users are required to identify themselves before performing any other actions that are to be mediated by the TSF and that require user identification.

G.5.2 FIA_UID.1 Timing of identification

G.5.2.1 User application notes

This component poses requirements for the user to be identified. The PP/ST author can indicate specific actions that can be performed before the identification takes place.

If FIA_UID.1 Timing of identification is used, the TSF-mediated actions mentioned in FIA_UID.1 Timing of identification should also appear in this FIA_UAU.1 Timing of authentication.

G.5.2.2 Operations

G.5.2.2.1 Assignment

In FIA_UID.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify a list of TSF-mediated actions that can be performed by the TSF on behalf of a user before the user has to identify itself. If no actions are appropriate, component FIA_UID.2 User identification before any action should be used instead. An example of such an action might include the request for help on the login procedure.

G.5.3 FIA_UID.2 User identification before any action

G.5.3.1 User application notes

In this component users will be identified. A user is not allowed by the TSF to perform any action before being identified.

G.6 User-subject binding (FIA_USB)

G.6.1 User notes

An authenticated user, in order to use the TOE, typically activates a subject. The user's security attributes are associated (totally or partially) with this subject. This family defines requirements to create and maintain the association of the user's security attributes to a subject acting on the user's behalf.

G.6.2 FIA_USB.1 User-subject binding

G.6.2.1 User application notes

It is intended that a subject is acting on behalf of the user who caused the subject to come into being or to be activated to perform a certain task.

Therefore, when a subject is created, that subject is acting on behalf of the user who initiated the creation. In cases where anonymity is used, the subject is still acting on behalf of a user, but the identity of that user is unknown. A special category of subjects are those subjects that serve multiple users (e.g. a server process). In such cases the user that created this subject is assumed to be the "owner".

G.6.2.2 Operations

G.6.2.2.1 Assignment

In FIA_USB.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify a list of the user security attributes that are to be bound to subjects.

In FIA_USB.1.2, the PP/ST author should specify any rules that are to apply upon initial association of attributes with subjects, or "none".

In FIA_USB.1.3, the PP/ST author should specify any rules that are to apply when changes are made to the user security attributes associated with subjects acting on behalf of users, or "none".

Annex H (normative)

Class FMT: Security management

This class specifies the management of several aspects of the TSF: security attributes, TSF data and functions in the TSF. The different management roles and their interaction, such as separation of capability, can also be specified.

In an environment where the TOE is made up of multiple physically separated parts, the timing issues with respect to propagation of security attributes, TSF data, and function modification become very complex, especially if the information is required to be replicated across the parts of the TOE. This should be considered when selecting components such as FMT_REV.1 Revocation, or FMT_SAE.1 Time-limited authorisation, where the behaviour might be impaired. In such situations, use of components from Internal TOE TSF data replication consistency (FPT_TRC) is advisable.

Figure H.1 shows the decomposition of this class into its constituent components.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of ISO/IEC 15408-2:2008

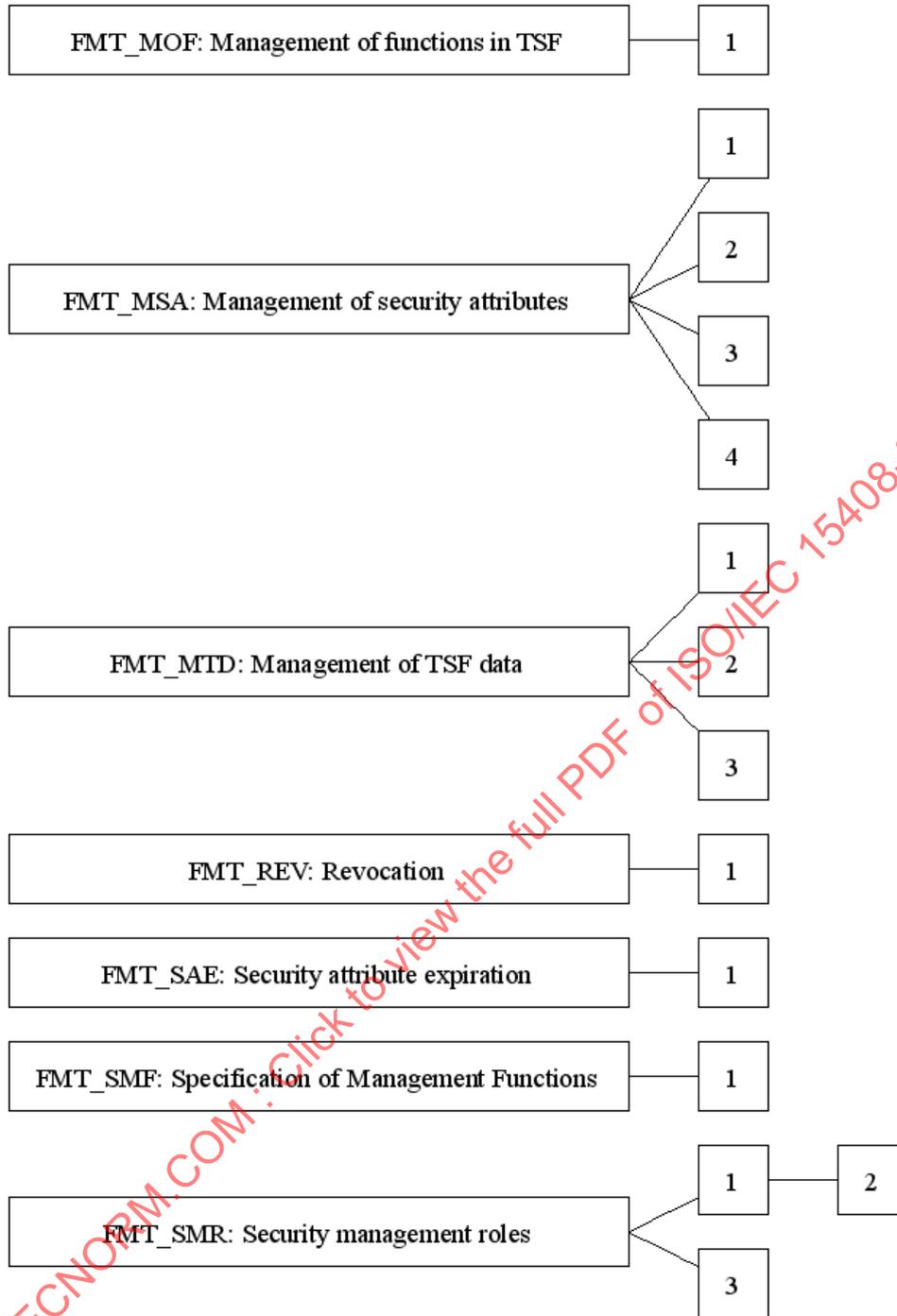


Figure H.1 - FMT: Security management class decomposition

H.1 Management of functions in TSF (FMT_MOF)

H.1.1 User notes

The TSF management functions enable authorised users to set up and control the secure operation of the TOE. These administrative functions typically fall into a number of different categories:

- a) Management functions that relate to access control, accountability and authentication controls enforced by the TOE. For example, definition and update of user security characteristics (e.g. unique identifiers associated with user names, user accounts, system entry parameters) or definition and update of auditing

system controls (e.g. selection of audit events, management of audit trails, audit trail analysis, and audit report generation), definition and update of per-user policy attributes (such as user clearance), definition of known system access control labels, and control and management of user groups.

- b) Management functions that relate to controls over availability. For example, definition and update of availability parameters or resource quotas.
- c) Management functions that relate to general installation and configuration. For example, TOE configuration, manual recovery, installation of TOE security fixes (if any), repair and reinstallation of hardware.
- d) Management functions that relate to routine control and maintenance of TOE resources. For example, enabling and disabling peripheral devices, mounting of removable storage media, backup and recovery.

Note that these functions need to be present in a TOE based on the families included in the PP or ST. It is the responsibility of the PP/ST author to ensure that adequate functions will be provided to manage the TOE in a secure fashion.

The TSF might contain functions that can be controlled by an administrator. For example, the auditing functions could be switched off, the time synchronisation could be switchable, and/or the authentication mechanism could be modifiable.

H.1.2 FMT_MOF.1 Management of security functions behaviour

H.1.2.1 User application notes

This component allows identified roles to manage the security functions of the TSF. This might entail obtaining the current status of a security function, disabling or enabling the security function, or modifying the behaviour of the security function. An example of modifying the behaviour of the security functions is changing of authentication mechanisms.

H.1.2.2 Operations

H.1.2.2.1 Selection

In FMT_MOF.1.1, the PP/ST author should select whether the role can determine the behaviour of, disable, enable, and/or modify the behaviour of the security functions.

H.1.2.2.2 Assignment

In FMT_MOF.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify the functions that can be modified by the identified roles. Examples include auditing and time determination.

In FMT_MOF.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify the roles that are allowed to modify the functions in the TSF. The possible roles are specified in FMT_SMR.1 Security roles.

H.2 Management of security attributes (FMT_MSA)

H.2.1 User notes

This family defines the requirements on the management of security attributes.

Security attributes affect the behaviour of the TSF. Examples of security attributes are the groups to which a user belongs, the roles he/she might assume, the priority of a process (subject), and the rights belonging to a role or a user. These security attributes might need to be managed by the user, a subject, a specific authorised user (a user with explicitly given rights for this management) or inherit values according to a given policy/set of rules.

It is noted that the right to assign rights to users is itself a security attribute and/or potentially subject to management by FMT_MSA.1 Management of security attributes.

FMT_MSA.2 Secure security attributes can be used to ensure that any accepted combination of security attributes is within a secure state. The definition of what "secure" means is left to the TOE guidance.

In some instances subjects, objects or user accounts are created. If no explicit values for the related security attributes are given, default values need to be used. FMT_MSA.1 Management of security attributes can be used to specify that these default values can be managed.

H.2.2 FMT_MSA.1 Management of security attributes

H.2.2.1 User application notes

This component allows users acting in certain roles to manage identified security attributes. The users are assigned to a role within the component FMT_SMR.1 Security roles.

The default value of a parameter is the value the parameter takes when it is instantiated without specifically assigned values. An initial value is provided during the instantiation (creation) of a parameter, and overrides the default value.

H.2.2.2 Operations

H.2.2.2.1 Assignment

In FMT_MSA.1.1, the PP/ST author should list the access control SFP(s) or the information flow control SFP(s) for which the security attributes are applicable.

H.2.2.2.2 Selection

In FMT_MSA.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify the operations that can be applied to the identified security attributes. The PP/ST author can specify that the role can modify the default value (change_default), query, modify the security attribute, delete the security attributes entirely or define their own operation.

H.2.2.2.3 Assignment

In FMT_MSA.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify the security attributes that can be operated on by the identified roles. It is possible for the PP/ST author to specify that the default value such as default access-rights can be managed. Examples of these security attributes are user-clearance, priority of service level, access control list, default access rights.

In FMT_MSA.1.1, the PP/ST author should specify the roles that are allowed to operate on the security attributes. The possible roles are specified in FMT_SMR.1 Security roles.

In FMT_MSA.1.1 if selected, the PP/ST author should specify which other operations the role could perform. An example of such an operation could be "create".

H.2.3 FMT_MSA.2 Secure security attributes

H.2.3.1 User application notes

This component contains requirements on the values that can be assigned to security attributes. The assigned values should be such that the TOE will remain in a secure state.

The definition of what "secure" means is not answered in this component but is left to the development of the TOE and the resulting information in the guidance. An example could be that if a user account is created, it should have a non-trivial password.